

***Colle, London
and
Blackmar
Diemer
Systems
T. D. Harding***





Hello everybody!!
Hola a todos!

We are a group of chess fans who are producing new chess material. We have members from all around the world, belonging to different cultures and speaking different languages, all of us joined by our common love for chess! We hope you will enjoy our work!

Somos un grupo de fanáticos del ajedrez, que estamos tratando de producir nuevo material como este, desarrollando diferentes proyectos e ideas. Tenemos miembros de diferentes partes del mundo, provenientes de diferentes culturas, hablando diferentes lenguas, unidos por nuestra pasión por el ajedrez!. Esperamos que disfruten de esta muestra de nuestro trabajo!.

If you are interested in joining us, or send any comments drop us an email at: caissa_lovers@yahoo.com.
Si alguien estuviese interesado en unirse al grupo nos pueden escribir a: caissa_lovers@yahoo.com.

Best regards!!
Saludos!

Caissa Lovers

SPECIALIST CHESS OPENINGS

GENERAL EDITOR: R.G. WADE

Colle, London and Blackmar-Diemer systems

T.D. HARDING

B.T. Batsford Limited *London*

First published 1979
© T.D.Harding 1979
ISBN 0 7134 21118

Typeset by
Master Chess Publications, London
Printed in Great Britain by
Billing & Sons Ltd., Guildford and Worcester
for the publishers
B.T.Batsford Limited
4 Fitzhardinge Street, London W1H 0AH.

Contents

Symbols and References	vi
Preface	vii
1 Introduction	1
2 Colle System (2 $\text{d}f3$, 3 $e3$), Ideas and Irregular Lines	10
3 Main Line Colle (with ... $d5$)	22
4 Colle v. Queen's Indian (... $b6$)	34
5 London System ($\text{d}f4$), Introduction	40
6 London v. King's Indian (... $g6$)	52
7 Miscellaneous after 2 $\text{d}f3$	69
8 Stonewall (2 $e3$ with $f4$ and $c3$)	83
9 Blackmar-Diemer Gambit (2 $e4$)	87
Index of Complete Games	102
Index of Variations	103

BATSFORD CHESS BOOKS
Advisor: R.G.Wade

Symbols and References

+	check
=	balanced position
±	some advantage to White
∓	some advantage to Black
±	clear advantage to White
∓	clear advantage to Black
∞	unclear
!	good move
!!	excellent move
!?	enterprising move (or idea worth further investigation)
?!	dubious move
?	weak move
??	outright blunder
Δ	with the idea of ...
1-0	Black resigned
½-½	Draw
0-1	White resigned
Ch	Championship
corres	Correspondence game

W or B at the side of a diagram indicates which player is to move. In the text, a number in brackets after a move refers to the diagram of that number.

The following were my chief sources:

ECO	<i>Encyclopaedia of Chess Openings</i> (volume D)
Euwe	<i>Theorie der Schach-Eroffnungen</i> (Tiel III, Berlin 1966)
Koltanowski	<i>Colle System</i> (Chess Digest)
N and T	Neikirkh and Tsvetkov, <i>Shakhmatny Debyuti</i> (volume 3; Sofia 1968)
Pachman	(i) <i>Queen's Gambit and other Closed Games</i> ; (ii) <i>Indian Systems</i>

and the following journals and periodicals:

British Chess Magazine, *Chess*, *Chess Player* 1-14, *Fernschach*, *Informator* 1-26 (R50-59), *Shakhmatny Bulletin*, 64.

Special sources for chapter 9 were:

E.J.Diemer	- <i>Vom Ersten Zug an Auf Matt!</i> (Amsterdam 1956, reprinted 1976 Schachverlag Rudi Schmauss, under the title ' <i>Das moderne Blackmar-Diemer Gambit</i> ') Kampars and Tejler - Chess Digest booklets (<i>Discover the Blackmar-Diemer Gambit</i> , 5 vols 1971-77)
------------	--

PREFACE

This book deals chiefly with the Colle System and with the opening 1 d4, 2 Qf3, 3 Qf4 (sometimes called the London System). I also discuss some variations (such as 1 d4 d5 2 Qf3 c5 and 1 d4 d5 2 Qf3 Qf5) which players adopting these openings need to know. One advantage of these debuts is their universality - White can play them against either 1 ... Qf6 or 1 ... d5 and adapt them to more or less any subsequent development used by Black.

The Colle and London Systems are more dangerous than their reputations. They may be somewhat old-fashioned, but that too can be a practical advantage. Players tend to study the variations used by contemporary grandmasters to the neglect of the old. This does not, however, invalidate the knowledge gained by the players of the past and readers will therefore find many pre-war games (and even some pre 1914 games) in this book.

The reader who adopts these openings in his own games will, consequently, be able to use ideas developed by some of the great masters of the past - while, at the same time, catching his less-prepared opponents on unfamiliar ground. There have, of course, been some developments in recent years - as the dates of the examples quoted show. In selecting games quoted, I have tried to blend the significant modern examples of the Queen Pawn Openings with the accepted theory and classical examples of these systems.

I should like to take this opportunity of thanking all those people whose help, encouragement and bullying finally brought this book into being. Apart from all at Batsfords, credit is due to Robert Bellin, Les Blackstock, George Botterill, Michael Franklin, and Arthur Hall.

T.D.Harding
Dublin
February 1979

1 Introduction

The Queen Pawn Openings discussed in this book have rarely attracted the attention of theoreticians. Nevertheless they have considerable practical value.

Many players do not have the time to study the fashionable openings which the masters play and which the experts and keen students imitate. They want a reliable way of beginning the game which will not be overthrown by some sensational grandmaster refutation, an opening which they can rely on from season to season. The Colle System and the London (Qf4) systems in this book are such openings.

There is, moreover, a lot to be said for learning an uncommon but sound opening and playing it regularly. Soon you know much more about it than your opponents do. Understanding from experience the middle-game positions which arise from it, especially when the opening is of a strategic rather than tactical character, is an advantage which far outweighs any risk that

the occasional opponent, knowing your repertoire, may prepare a special answer to it.

The British master, Michael Franklin, has scored countless points with the London system against the King's Indian Defence, 1 d4 Qf6 2 Qf3 g6 3 Qf4 which is discussed in chapter 6. In his hands, a supposedly innocuous opening has become a fearsome weapon with which, at one time or another, he has defeated most of the leading English players.

It is noteworthy that Spassky has taken up this variation, although he did not handle it in quite the same way as Franklin. Here is the game Spassky-Bukic, Bugojno 1978:

1	d4	Qf6
2	Qf3	g6
3	Qf4	

3 Qg5 has become more popular recently, but it does not have quite the same meaning as the move played by Spassky. On g5, the bishop may help to control d5 (by threatening Qxf6) but it does not give White pressure against the

square c7, which is one of the features of the London System. Also the bishop on g5 may be more readily challenged, by ... h6 or ... d4.

In this book I shall not be considering Queen Pawn Openings in which White develops this bishop on g5.

3 ... g7
4 e3 0-0
5 d2

This is a modest square for the bishop, which Franklin usually plays to c4. White is in effect playing, in reverse, the London System against Reti's Opening. This consists in erecting a barrier of pawns (by d4, e3 and often c3 also) to minimise the effect of the fianchettoed black bishop, having first developed White's own bishop outside the pawn chain in order to avoid its becoming bad. Against the Reti, there is the same choice of squares for the king's bishop.

5 ... d6
6 0-0 d7
7 h3

Black plays to achieve the advance ... e5, which cannot be prevented. In doing so, however, he is backward in the development of his b-side. The plan of ... b6 and ... b7, perhaps in conjunction with ... c5, is sometimes preferred. White plays h3 in order to preserve his bishop; the move is usually desirable sooner or later.

7 ... e8
8 c4

The reason for not playing d4 is now seen. Spassky intends to take the initiative on the b-side.

8 ... e5
9 h2 e7

Bukic criticised this move in *Informator*, preferring 9 ... d4 (to meet 10 d3 with 10 ... dxc3). At least two courses would have been open to Spassky then. He could have played 10 a3!? and, after 10 ... a6 or 10 ... c6, 11 e1 preparing for c4-c5. Alternatively, he could challenge the knight by 10 d2 dxf6 (10 ... dxd2 11 bxd2) 11 de 12 b2 d5 13 d3. White's positional edge should survive the simplifications because Black's e-pawn is under pressure on e5. If it advances to e4 then the h2-b8 diagonal becomes open for the white bishop.

9 ... d4 was tried in Yusupov-Tukmakov, USSR 1st League 1978, but the reply was 10 d2. There followed 10 ... dxd2 11 bxd2 e4 12 d1 e7 13 d2 f5 with a reasonable position for Black. After 14 b4 g5 15 c5 d6 16 a3 f4 17 ef g4 18 hg d4 19 d4 g4 d4 the position became double-edged but a draw was agreed after 20 e1 d4 21 d4 d8 22 c1 d3 23 e3 f8 24 c4+ f7 25 xe4 d5 26 c4 e3 27 fe d2 28 xf7+ xf7 29 d4 xa2 30 d5 xe5 in view of the active black rook and opposite coloured bishops which cancel out White's extra pawn.

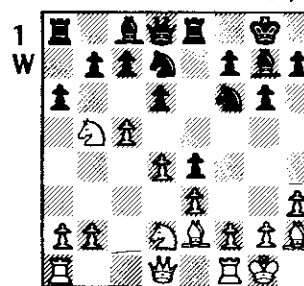
10 d3 e4

The sequel shows this advance to be mistaken. A game F.Portisch-Butnoriu, USSR 1969, went instead 10 ... c6 11 b2 d8 12 b4 f5 13 c5 d5 14 de dxe5 15 d4 d6 =. Almost certainly, Spassky had a stronger continuation in mind. 11 c5!? is a possibility, for if 11 ... d4 12 de, 11 ... d5 12 dxe5 while if 11 ... ed 12 ed or 11 ... e4 12 d2 the threat of 13 d6, winning the exchange, becomes embarrassing for Black.

11 d2 e8
12 b5 d8

The queen returns to her home square, having made three moves! However 12 ... d8 13 c5 would also be unsatisfactory (13 ... d4 14 dxc7).

13 c5! a6(1)



Spassky now demonstrates the correctness of his strategy by 'winning' three pawns for a knight. The rest of the game requires less comment.

14 cd! ab
15 dc e7
16 dxb5

One of Spassky's extra pawns is a protected pawn on the 7th -

thanks to the London System bishop. He also controls most of the squares that matter so Bukic finds it hard to organise his pieces.

16 ... f8
17 d4 e6
18 c2 d5

If 18 ... d5 19 a3 followed by e1 and the break f2-f3.

19 a4 e6
20 f1 e8
21 c3 d6

Not 21 ... d6? 22 d7 d7 22 b6.

22 d5 b6
23 d4 d7
24 b3

Defending b5 and so threatening a4-a5.

24 ... f6
25 d7 d7
26 b5! f5

Not 26 ... b5 27 ab xa1 28 xa1 followed by e8.

27 d3 f6

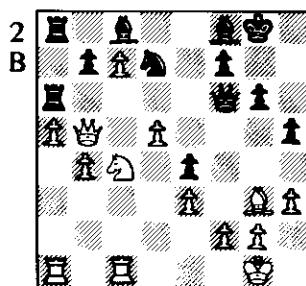
27 ... h5 was a better try, according to Bukic, who was now in time trouble.

28 d5! f6
29 a5 h5
30 b4(2)

A new phase: White threatens to cash in his pawn majority by advancing it.

30 ... h4
31 d2 f5
32 f1! g5
33 f3 g6
34 d1 ef
35 xf3 c2

Bukic's desperate counter-attack



has resulted only in the exchange of the e-pawn which was his last bulwark in the centre.

36 Bb2 Bc3
37 d6 Ba6
38 e4 Bc1+
39 Bf1 Bc3
40 Bb5 Qf6

The weak f-pawn (40 ... Bg7 41 Bdf2) causes the collapse of the blockade.

41 Bxf6! 1-0

If 41 ... Bxf6 42 d7 Bxd7 43 Bxd7 and the c-pawn will be next to claim a victim, while if 41 ... Bxf6 42 Be5 Bc1+ 43 Bd1 White not only wins the rook but he still has his pawns.

The full discussion of the London System against ... g6 is in chapter 6. The move Bf4 can also be played at move 2 or 3 against other set-ups by Black, e.g. 1 d4 Qf6 2 Qf3 e6 (or 2 ... b6) 3 Bf4 or 1 d4 d5 2 Bf4 or 1 d4 d5 2 Qf3 Qf6 3 Bf4. Such lines are to be found in chapter 5.

Although this type of attack is by no means new - it dates back to the beginning of the century at least - it has still not received a thorough

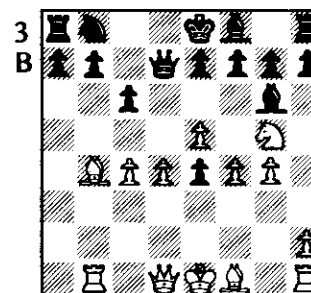
investigation. The main idea is, once more, to use the Bf4 to exploit any weaknesses that may appear on the b8-h2 diagonal, especially if Black has played not only ... d5 but also ... e6 or ... c6 as well. Secondary ideas are to post a knight on e5 and then to adopt a Colle-like formation aimed at an eventual Q-side attack.

One drawback of the Bf4 systems is that Black may be able to counter-attack rapidly against b2, which is left unprotected by the bishop sortie. A lively recent example of this plan is the following game, which probably raises more questions than it answers.

Rakic-Bagiroy, 'Partizan Belgrade' v. Burevestnik, European Club Championship 1979:

1 d4 d5
2 Qf3 c6
3 Bf4 Bb6
4 Bbd2
4 Bc1 is safer.
5 ... Bxb2
6 e4 Qf6
7 Qxe4 de
8 Bb1 Bxa2
9 Qg5 Ba5+
10 Bd2 Bb5
11 Bb4 Bf5
12 g4 Bg6
13 c4 Bb7
14 f4(3)

Can White's gambit be sound? In this game it was enterprisingly refuted.



14 ... ef
15 e6 f2+!
16 Bxf2 fe 17 Bb2 Qa6 18 Bc3 e5
19 Bg2 e6 20 Be1 Be7 21 Bxe5
0-0+ 22 Qg1 Qf6 23 Qf3 Bb8 24
Be1 c5 25 Qe5 Qxe5 26 Bxe5 cd
27 Bxb7 Bxb7! 28 Qxb7 dc 29
Bc1 c2 30 Be1 Qc5 31 Be4 Qxe4
32 Bxe4 Bb1+ 0-1.

An earlier example in which Bf4 was more successful is von Scheve-Marshall, Monte Carlo 1901:

1 d4 d5
2 Bf4 c5
3 e3 Qc6
4 c3 Bb6
5 Bb2 c4?

This is almost invariably a mistake because it takes all the pressure off White's centre. 5 ... Qf6 is correct.

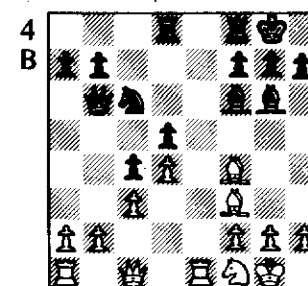
6 Qf3 Qf6
7 Be2 Bf5
8 0-0 Qe4
9 Bc1 e6
10 Bbd2 Be7
11 Qxe4 Qxe4
12 Qd2 Bg6
13 e4

Retribution for Black's 5th move

begins. The c4-pawn is now seen to be weak.

13 ... 0-0
14 ed ed
15 Bf3 Bb8
16 Be1 Bf6
17 Qf1(4)

Black's long-term prospects are not good. White will complete his development by Bb2 and then double his rooks on the e-file. The knight can go to e3 to increase the pressure against d5. Marshall, never one to endure torture passively, decided on a counter-stroke which at least offered practical chances.



17 ... Qxd4!?
18 cd Bxd4
19 Bg5! b5
20 Bxf6 Bxf6
21 Qe3 d4
22 Qd5 Bb6
23 Bb2 d3

White, with knight for two pawns, faces some technical difficulties.

24 b3 Bh8
25 bc bc
26 Bb1 Bc5
27 Qe3 Bd4
28 Bc3 f5

29 ♖ec1 ♗a5
30 ♖d1

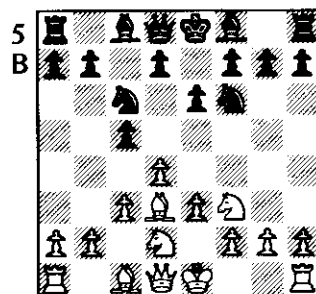
White now has a thorough blockade but 30 ... ♗c5 followed by 31 ... ♖c8 would still set him an examination in technique. Instead Marshall, untypically, blundered:

30 ... ♖f7?
31 ♖xd3 ♗xd2

32 ♖3xd2 ♖xd2 33 ♖xd2 f4 34 ♖d1 g5 35 h4 h6 36 ♖c3 ♖e8 37 ♖d7 ♖e1+ 38 ♗h2 ♖g6 39 ♖xa7 ♖f5 40 hg hg 41 ♖a5 ♖d3 42 ♖xg5 ♖c1 43 ♖d5 ♖c2 44 ♖f6 ♖h7 45 ♖e4 1-0. See chapter 5 for a full discussion of this opening.

The first chapters in this book deal with the Colle System, in which White adopts similar formations except that he delays the development of his queen's bishop. That piece may go to b2 (as in the Zuckertort form of the opening) or remain on c1 until it is clear what will be its best square. A typical formation for White can be seen in diagram 5. An allied opening is the Stonewall (chapter 8) but that is generally less recommended than the Colle because of the rigidity of the pawn formation c3+d4+e3+f4. Both openings can, however, lead to dangerous and almost automatic ♗-side attacks for White if Black is unable to find counterplay.

Diagram 5 arises by 1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 e6 3 e3 c5 4 ♖d3 ♖c6 5 c3. The move c2-c3, protecting d4 and preventing ... ♖b4, characterises the Colle system. Black may or may



not play an early ... d5. White will normally play ♖bd2, 0-0 and then advance e3-e4. There are plenty of examples of this plan against various black formations in chapters 2-4.

The game Enevoldsen-Nimzowitsch, Copenhagen 1935, followed a different course: (from diagram 5)

5 ... b6
6 0-0 ♖e7
7 a3!? 0-0
8 e4 d5

Black is late in playing this - he normally is able to meet e4 with ... de. Now White produces a middle-game similar to the Advance Variation of the French Defence.

9 e5 ♖d7
10 ♗e2 ♖e8
11 ♖f4

Nimzowitsch has to face his own strategy of over-protection! If 11 ... f6 12 ef ♖xf6 13 ♖e5! ♖xe5 14 de White has attacking chances on the ♗-side.

11 ... a5
12 ♖bd2 c4
13 ♖c2 b5

As Black's counter-attack gathers momentum, White finds a way to keep the initiative.

14 ♖e4! ♖f8

Not 14 ... de? 15 ♗xe4 threatening both ♗xh7+ and ♗xc6.

15 ♖g3 ♖d7
16 h3 ♖a7
17 ♖h2 b4
18 ab ab
19 ♖xa7 ♖xa7
20 ♖a1 ♖b5
21 ♖d2 ♗b6?

According to Pachman, Black would have had much better chances of holding the game with 21 ... bc 22 bc ♖a3 to drive the Colle bishop off its killer diagonal b1-h7.

22 ♖g4 bc
23 bc ♖a3
24 ♖xa3! ♖xa3
25 ♖h5 ♖g6

If 25 ... ♖e7 26 ♖h6! gives a winning attack.

26 ♖gf6+ ♗h8
27 ♖xg7 ♖g8
28 ♖xh7! ♗xg7

Black also loses after 28 ... ♖xg7 (or 28 ... ♗xh7 29 ♗h5+) 29 ♖f6 ♖h7! 30 ♖xh7 ♗xh7 31 ♗h5+ ♗g7 32 ♗h6+ ♗g8 33 ♖xg6 fg 34 ♗xg6+ ♖f8 35 ♖h6+ mating in 5 with checks.

29 ♗h5 f5
30 ef+ ♖f7 31 ♖g5+ ♗xf6 32 ♗f3+ ♖e7 33 ♗f7+ ♖d8 34 ♗xg8+ ♖f8 35 ♖h7 ♗b2 36 ♖xf8 ♗xc2 37 ♖xe6++ ♖e7 38 ♖g5+ ♖d6 39 ♗f8+ ♖c6 40 ♗xa3 1-0 (40 ... ♖xe6 41 ♗a6+).

The Colle System is so named because of the Belgian master Edgar Colle (1897-1932) who scored many brilliant victories with it. Colle was a dangerous attacking player who, but for ill-health, would probably have become a grandmaster. His compatriot George Koltanowski (now a Californian) was influenced by Colle and also played this opening with great success and wrote about it.

Although the system is rightly named after Colle, there were some early anticipations of his plan. Perhaps the first of these was the game Charousek-Suchting, Berlin 1897, which follows. Charousek was another player of enormous potential which was not realised because of illness (he died in 1900 at the age of 26).

Here is the game Charousek-Suchting:

1 d4 d5
2 e3 ♖f6
3 ♖f3 c5
4 c3 e6
5 ♖d3 ♖c6
6 0-0 ♖d6
7 ♖bd2 e5?!

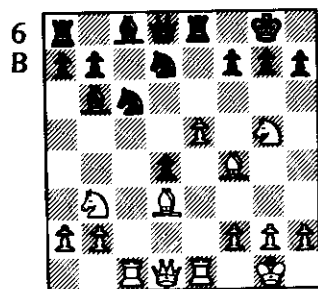
This is better delayed until Black has castled.

8 dc ♖xc5
9 e4 d4?!

As P.W.Sergeant commented, in his book *Charousek's Games of Chess*, Black is quickly subjected to an attack after this and ought to have preferred 9 ... de. Then 10

Qxe4 Qxe4 11 Qxe4 would offer White a slight advantage, based on the ♖-side pawn majority and threats against e5.

10	Qb3	Qb6
11	cd	ed
12	e5!	Qd7
13	Qg5	♗c7
14	Ee1	0-0
15	Ee1	Ee8
16	Qf4	♗d8
17	Qg5!(6)	



17 ... Qdx5

Black is obliged to accept the offered e-pawn now. If instead 17 ... Qf8 18 ♗h5 g6 19 ♗h6 Δ 20 Qe4, 21 Qf6+. Or if 17 ... h6 18 Qxf7 ♗xf7 19 Qc4+ ♗f8 20 ♗f3 Δ 21 Qg5+.

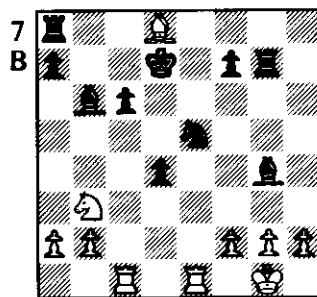
18	♗h5	h6
19	Qh7+	♗f8

If 19 ... ♗h8 20 Qxf7+ Qxf7 21 Ee8+ ♗xe8 22 Qg6.

20	Qe4!	Qg4
21	♗h4	hg
22	♗h8+	♗e7
23	Qxg5+	Qd7
24	♗xg7	Eg8
25	Qxc6+	bc
26	Qxd8	Eg7

27 Qf6!(7)

Charousek avoids the nasty trap 27 Qxb6? Qf3+! when Black wins.



27	...	Qd3
28	Qxg7	Qxe1
29	Ee1	c5
30	Qf6	Ee8
31	Ee8	♗xe8
32	f3	Qf5

The smoke has cleared, leaving Charousek a pawn ahead but facing some technical difficulties. 32 ... Qe6 (Sergeant) would have been better, the correct reply being 33 ♗f1 and not 33 Qc1? d3 34 Qc3 c4+ 35 ♗f1 Qe3.

33	Qd2	♗d7
34	Qc4	♗e6

34 ... Qc7 was also possible but Black trusted to the bishops of opposite colours.

35	Qxb6	ab
36	Qd8	b5
37	a3	c4?

Better was 37 ... ♗d5.

38	Qa5	Qc2
39	Qd2	f5?

This makes it easier for White to obtain connected passed pawns.

40	♗f2	Qd3
----	-----	-----

41	g4	♗f6
42	♗g3	♗g6
43	h4	fg
44	fg	Qe2
45	h5+	♗h7
46	♗h4	Qd1
47	g5	♗g7?

The last chance was 47 ... Qc2 48 g6+ (not immediately forced, it is true) 48 ... Qxg6 49 hg+ ♗xg6 50 ♗g4 c3 hoping to reach the drawn endgame of ♗ versus ♗, Q and a-pawn (since the bishop cannot control a8).

48	g6	♗f6
49	Qg5+	♗g7
50	Qe7!	1-0

If 50 ... d3 51 Qb4 and 52 ♗g5 cannot be prevented since 51 ... ♗h6 52 Qf8 is checkmate.

In the popular form of the Queen Pawn Opening, 1 d4 is followed by 2 c4. This gives White more space than the systems in this book, in which White holds back his c-pawn. The drawback of 2 c4 is that it allows Black to strike back against d4 with defences like the Benoni, King's Indian or Grünfeld or (after 1 d4 d5 2 c4) the various defences to the Queen's Gambit. All these well-analysed lines are avoided by playing 1 d4 and (after 1 ... d5 or 1 ... Qf6) 2 Qf3. In certain cases, such as when Black plays 2 ... Qf5!?, White can after all play 3 c4 and obtain some advantage.

The chapters that follow discuss these openings in detail. Although there are few critical main lines, such as one finds in the Sicilian

Defence, I have arranged examples so far as possible according to the normal Batsford system of variations and numbered sub-variations. The reader should remain constantly aware of the possibility of transposing from one variation to another, as (in the general absence of sharp early threats) the move-order is often flexible. Several transpositions are pointed out in the text but it would be impossible to mention all those which might arise in a game.

The Stonewall Attack (chapter 8) is an illustration of this. Although the 2 e3 move order is standard, White has the interesting alternative 2 Qd2!?. This move rules out the London System but otherwise keeps Black guessing. White may subsequently adopt a Stonewall but he also has the option of a delayed Qgf3. In that case he leads the game into a Colle (with either c3 or b3).

My final bonus chapter deals with the controversial Blackmar-Diemer Gambit, 1 d4 d5 2 e4!? de 3 Qc3 Qf6 4 f3. I have concentrated my attention there on the two most popular defences, Bogoljubow's 5 ... g6 and the Tartakower-Gunderam Defence 4 ... ef 5 Qxf3 Qf5. These, I believe, are the main reason the gambit is rarely played in serious master chess. Nevertheless, the cause of the Blackmar-Diemer is far from hopeless below master level and any chess player can derive instruction and entertainment from its analysis.

2 Colle System (2 d3, 3 e3), Ideas and Irregular Lines

The Queen Pawn Openings to be discussed in chapters 2-4 involves White adopting the piece-pawn set up shown in diagram 5. This opening was a speciality of the Belgian master Edgar Colle (1897-1932) and of his compatriot George Koltanowski (who later emigrated to America). They turned what in the 19th century had been an occasional method of development into a major attacking system with clearly defined objectives. However counters were finally found so that the Colle System has been only occasionally seen in post-war master chess. Below master level, it retains its sting in the hands of a good attacking player, especially as its finesses are largely forgotten now.

It is often said that White in the Colle System takes upon himself the role of the second player with a tempo in hand. He renounces attempts to fight for control of Black's strong-point d5 by the traditional methods (c4, d3, g5). Instead, he aims for e3-e4 in the middle-game, when it will be backed up by pieces massed in the centre, and for control of e5 (especially in lines with b3).

If Black plays in routine fashion, castling too early and failing to react vigorously in the centre, White has an automatic e-side attack which often culminates in a sacrificial breakthrough by d4-h7+ (or d4-f7). White's main problem is his dark-squared bishop, which is restricted by the pawn chain on its own colour.

Black's counterplay generally consists in central pawn advances aimed at saddling White with an isolated d-pawn which later may become weak, and by preparing tactical blows either against h2 or (in the lines with ... b6) on the diagonal a8-h1. He has a considerable choice of development of his bishops and queen's knight, especially if he has not played ... d5. Both players must be careful about their move-order, so to avoid confusion we shall treat the Colle and allied lines in four separate chapters, viz.:

- a) All lines with d4 are in chapter 5.
- b) Lines with ... b6 (no early ... d5) in chapter 4.
- c) Lines with ... d5 by Black and c3 by White in chapter 3.
- d) Others in this chapter.

1 d4 d6
Or 1 ... d5 2 d3 d6 3 e3, but with ... d6 no longer possible the alternative 3 d4 seems more appropriate to us.

2 d3 e6
Lines in which Black plays ... d6 and ... d5, but refrains from ... e6, are discussed in B below.

3 e3 d5
3 ... b6 or 3 ... c5 (with ... b6 and not ... d5) are in chapter 4.

4 d3
Or:
a) 4 d5 d6 5 f4 dxe5 6 fe d4 7 f3 f5 8 d2 h4+ 9 g3 h6 10 dxe4 fe 11 f4 (Sultan Khan-Voellmy, Berne 1932) 11 ... fxf4 12 ef d7 = ECO.

b) 4 d2 c5 5 0-0 d6 6 a3 d6 7 dc dxc5 8 b4 d6 9 d2 0-0 10 c4 dc 11 dxc4 e5 = Blackburne-Pillsbury, London 1899.

c) 4 b3 c5 5 d2 d6 6 d3 cd (6 ... d6 7 d3 see A below) 7 ed d5 8 a3 d4 9 d3 dxd2 10 dxd2 d7 11 0-0 d7 12 d3 0-0 13 d1 ± Rossetto-Karaklajic, Belgrade 1962.

d) 4 d3 c5 and now:
d1) 5 d5!? d6 6 d5 d6 7 c4 d6 8 d4 d7 9 dxd7 dxd7 (Sultan Khan-Maroczy, London 1932) is unclear.

d2) 5 a3 d6 6 dc dxc5 7 b4 d7 8 d2 0-0 9 c4 b6 (9 ... dc 10 dxc4 ± Rubinstein-Capablanca, Berlin 1928) 10 d3 dc 11 dxc4 d7 12 0-0 d8 13 d2 (Rubinstein-Monticelli, Budapest 1929) 13 ... d5 = - Evans.

d3) 5 c3 when:

d31) 5 ... d6 6 d5!? (6 d3 below) 6 ... d6 (6 ... d6!? - ECO) 7 de d7 8 f4 f6 9 d3 g6 10 ef fxf6 11 e4 (Bisguier-Lombardy, New York 1957-58) with complications.

d32) 5 ... b6!? 6 d5+! d6 7 d7 7 d3! gaining control of e5 thanks to Black's misplaced bishop.) 7 d5 d6 8 f4 d7 9 0-0 a6 10 d4 d7 11 f3 d5 12 fe d4 13 dxe4 de 14 g4 0-0 15 d2 ± Riumin-Rabinovich, Moscow 1935.

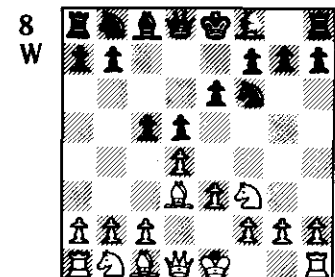
d33) 5 ... d6 is usual:

d331) 6 d3 below.

d332) 6 d5!? dxe5 7 de d7 8 f4 f6 9 d3 g6 10 ef dxf6 11 d3 d7 12 0-0 0-0 13 d2 d6 = (½:½, 47) Wachtel-Alekhine, London 1922.

d333) 6 d5 d6 (or 6 ... d7 7 d5 d6 8 f4 d4!? Sultan Khan-Tartakower, match 1931) 7 d2 d6 8 d5 dxe5 (8 ... 0-0!? = - ECO) 9 de d7 10 f4 0-0 11 d3 d7 12 d3 f6 13 ef dxf6 14 0-0 d7 15 c4 d8 16 d5 d6 = Tartakower-Euwe, Vienna 1921.

4 ... c5(8)



This move is desirable, to put pressure on the white centre, but not obligatory. Alternatives are discussed in C, below.

White now usually plays 5 c3, which is the subject of chapter 3. He can also play:

5 b3 – A, below.

5 0-0, defying Black to play ... c4 (Maroczy-Nimzowitsch, Göthenburg 1920) – a move that is invariably bad in the Colle if White can play d2 (with e4 soon following) but is not so clear here. In Potter-Zukertort, 3rd match game 1875, Black played instead 5 ... d6 and the game went on 6 a3!? (6 c3 or 6 b3 would be normal.) 6 ... d6 7 d3!? b6 8 b3 0-0 9 b2 transposing to A below.

A

Colle-Zukertort System (5 b3)

Johannes Zukertort (1842-1888), the Polish-born loser of the first World Championship match (v. Steinitz in 1886), in his early career was a disciple of Adolf Anderssen and delighted in the romantic gambits like the Evans, but in his mature years was one of the pioneers of closed openings like the English, Queen's Gambit and various QPOs. In the London 1883 tournament which was his greatest triumph he played several games with a system closely allied to the one in this chapter, but in which he developed his bishop less aggressively on e2.

However, against Blackburne on

11.6.1883, he launched the system which now bears his name. This victory ensured Zukertort the first prize with four rounds still to go!

Zukertort-Blackburne: 1 d4 e6 2 d3 d6 3 e3 d5 4 d3 e7 5 0-0 0-0 6 b3 c5 7 d2 d6 8 d2 ('I ... determined to fight the whole battle on the Queen's side.') 8 ... cd(?) 9 ed b6 10 c4 a6 ('The commencement of a futile attack ...') 11 e1 e8 12 e1 a5 13 e5 a4(?) 14 c5(!) d3 15 d3 d2 16 d2 d4 17 e3 e8 18 f3 d6 19 e2 d7 20 e1 bc ('This exchange gives White a crushing superiority in numbers on the Queen's side, which must decide the contest before Black can make any use of his strong centre.') 21 dc b8 22 e5 f6 ('After 22 ... b6 23 d6 dxc6 – 23 ... e6 24 d3 – I intended to proceed with 24 b4, for Black dare not take the pawn on account of 25 d3!') 23 c6(!) e7 (23 ... fe 24 c7 d7 25 cb=d3 b8 26 e7) 24 d2 (24 d3?? d4!) 24 ... fe 25 dxa5 d8 (25 ... dxc6? 26 a4) 26 dxe5 f7 (26 ... e6? 27 a7) 27 dxb8 d8 28 c7 d8 29 a7 e5 30 e5 e4 31 b5 e8 32 b8 d7 33 f8+ f8 34 a4 a4 35 ba e8 36 fe de 37 d2 (37 a5 also wins.) 37 ... f7 38 e3 e6 39 dxe4 g6 40 e6+ d7 41 d5 1-0. (Notes based on Zukertort's in the tournament book.)

Zukertort's system was revived by Morrison and Watson in the

London 1922 international tournament and was subsequently played from time to time by a few grandmasters. However, it never attained the high reputation which the Colle system proper attained at its height. Black does not experience serious difficulties in equalizing so long as he avoids the exchange c5xd4 which led to Blackburne's downfall.

White occasionally plays a plan based on b3 and d2 against the lines where Black avoids ... d5, but these are discussed in chapter 4 because they are not, strictly speaking, a Zukertort variation.

So, continuing from diagram 8:

5 b3 d6

Others:

a) 5 ... cd?! 6 ed d4+ (See below for 6 ... d6 and 6 ... d6.) 7 c3 (7 f1!? – Alekhine) 7 ... d6 8 0-0 d6 9 e2 d7 10 e1 0-0 11 e5 b6 12 d5 d7 13 f3 ± Euwe-Beffie, Hastings 1922.

b) 5 ... d2 6 d2 (6 d2!?, preventing ... d4 and envisaging e3-e4 – Sozin):

b1) 6 ... a5+? 7 d2 d4 8 0-0 (8 dxe4 de 9 d5 cd! 10 dxe4 de – Sozin) 8 ... f5 (Nenarokov-Sorokin, 6th match game 1929) 9 c4! ± – Sozin, *Shakmatny Listok*.

b2) 6 ... d6 7 0-0 d7 8 d2 (8 c4!? 0-0 9 d3 a6 10 cd ed 11 e1 ± ECO) 8 ... e5! 9 de dxe5 10 d5+ d7 11 d7+ d7 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 d3 d8 15 e2 0-0 16 d1 = Tartakower-Orbakh, Giessen 1928.

b3) 6 ... b6 7 0-0 d7 8 d2 d6 9 dc (9 e1!?) 9 ... dxc5 (9 ... bc 10 c4 or 9 ... dxc5 10 d5+) 10 e2 0-0 11 e4 e8? (11 ... de 12 dxe4 dxe4 13 dxe4 dxe4 14 dxe4 d6 ± ECO) 12 e5 d5 13 g3 g6 14 d4 e8 15 f4 with a double-edged game (1-0, 41), Spielmann-Stoltz, match 1943.

b4) 6 ... cd 7 ed d6 8 d2 d7 9 0-0 0-0 10 e2 e8 11 d5 d8 12 f4 d7 13 g4 d6 14 g5 d6 15 d5 e7 16 f3 ± Eljaschoff-Hilse, Dusseldorf 1908.

b5) 6 ... d7 7 0-0 0-0 8 d2 and now:

b51) 8 ... d7 9 d5 b6 10 f4 d7 11 c4 d4 12 cd ed 13 dxe4 de 14 d4 d6 15 e2 d8 16 d1 ± Rabinovich-Makagonov, 10th USSR Ch 1937.

b52) 8 ... b6 9 d5 d7 10 f4 d4 11 e2 e8 12 dxe4 de 13 d5 dxe5 14 de d7 15 f5 ef 16 d4! d8 17 f5 d5 18 d5 d5 19 g4 ± Guimard-Lundin, Groningen 1946.

b53) 8 ... a6 9 d5 dxe5 10 de d7 11 f4 b5 12 c4 bc 13 bc d6 14 d2 g6 15 d1 ± Yudovich-Blumenfeld, USSR 1934.

6 d2

Alternatively:

a) 6 0-0 and now:

a1) 6 ... d6 7 d2 (7 d2 below) 7 ... a5 and if 8 d2 cd 9 ed a3 – Euwe.

a2) 6 ... b8 7 d2 b5 8 dc dxc5 9 d4 d4 10 ed d6 11 e2 b4 12 d2 0-0 13 d3 d7 14 d5 e8 with complications,

Vorotnikov-Korchnoi, USSR 1964. ECO suggests 9 d2 with the idea e3-e4 ±.

a3) 6 ... cd 7 ed d7 (Beltran-Djurasevic, Oberhausen 1961) 8 e1!? or 8 b2!? – ECO.

a4) Also noteworthy is 6 ... c7!? when Havin-Ravinsky, ½-final Burevestnik Club Ch 1956, continued 7 b2 (7 a3 e5 =) 7 ... cd 8 ed b4 9 e5 d7 10 e1 e8 11 c4 dxd3 12 bxd3 dc 13 bc d6 14 d2 0-0 15 e3 f8 16 h3 with attacking chances (1-0, 32).

b) 6 a3 can be met by 6 ... b6 7 b2 c4 8 e2 d7 – Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.

The text move is best. White would like to tempt moves like ... a5+, ... cd or ... c6-b4 all of which should recoil on Black's head.

6 ... d6

Questionable plans are:

a) 6 ... cd 7 ed b4+ (7 ... d6 below) 8 c3 d6 9 0-0 0-0 10 c4 b6 11 d2 b7 12 e5 (1-0, 35) Rotlevi-Rozenkrantz, St Petersburg 1909.

b) 6 ... e7 7 d2 d4?! 8 0-0 dxd3 9 cd b6 10 e5 b7 11 f4 cd 12 d4 ± Tempelhoff-Rikman, corres 1974-5. Better 7 ... 0-0 8 0-0 b6, but not 8 ... cd which transposes to Zukertort-Blackburne above.

c) 6 ... d7 7 0-0 e8 8 c3 (8 a3 ± ECO) 8 ... d6 9 d2 e5 10 de xe5 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 f3 b8 13 h3 c4 14 c2 0-0 15 d4 e8 (Gunsberg-Steinitz, match 1890)

was unclear.

7 0-0

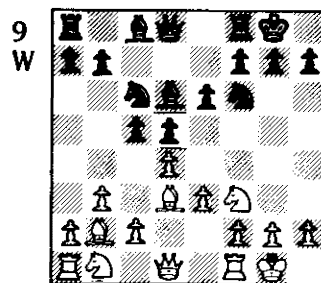
If 7 d2:

a) 7 ... b4 8 e2 e7 9 a3 c6 10 e5 xe5 11 de d7 12 f4 f5 13 c4 ± Rubinstein-Treybal, Baden-Baden 1925.

b) 7 ... 0-0 8 a3 e7 9 e5 (Dus-Hotimirski v. Romanovsky, USSR 1948) 9 ... d8 10 0-0 d7 11 f4 f8 = – Bogoljubow.

7 ... 0-0!(9)

7 ... c7 is also playable (to prevent e5) as the following game by the young Smyslov illustrates: 8 a3 b6 9 c4 b7 10 c3 a6 11 e1 (correct is 11 dc bc 12 cd ed 13 e1 starting the fight against Black's hanging pawns – Smyslov) 11 ... cd 12 ed 0-0 13 d4 f4 14 e5 (14 c5!?) 14 ... dc 15 bc dxe5 16 de c6! 17 f1? (17 f3 f) 17 ... f8 18 b3 g4 19 h3 d3! 20 bxb6 (20 bxd3 h2+ 21 h1 fxf2+) 20 ... h3! 21 d4 h2+ 22 h1 xe5+ 0-1 Gerasimov-Smyslov, Moscow House of Pioneers Ch 1935.



After the text move, Alekhine wrote, 'White is faced with a dilemma as to how he is to carry

through his intended plan (occupying e5) in its full entirety'.

8 a3

Usually played, as ... b4 might soon be troublesome. Others:

a) 8 d2 e7 (now ... e5 is in the air) 9 e5 cd 10 ed a3 11 xa3 xa3 f Bogoljubow-Capablanca, New York 1924. However, 9 c4 is some improvement for White (Spielmann-Stoltz, 5th match game 1933).

b) 8 e5 (Maroczy-Bogoljubow, New York 1924) can be met by 8 ... e7 9 f4 cd '... after which the exchange of the adverse bishop is forced' – Alekhine. This is not strictly true as White can play 10 ed b4 11 e2 e4 12 a3 c6 13 d2. In view of this, there seems no reason to criticise the plan adopted by Bogoljubow in the game: 8 ... e7!? 9 d2 b6 10 f4 b7 11 f3 e8 12 g4 (12 g4 c4! 13 bc dc 14 bxb7 cd 15 cd ed5 f) 12 ... d4 13 d4 when 13 ... f5 (Alekhine) would have been simplest, and would give a roughly even position.

Black could also consider meeting 8 e5 by 8 ... d7!? (ECO) or 8 ... c7 9 f4 cd 10 ed b4 11 c3 dxd3 12 bxd3 d7 = Rabinovich-Bogoljubow, Moscow 1924.

8 ... b6

a) 8 ... cd is still wrong. Alekhine-Rosselli, Zurich 1934, continued 9 ed b6 10 d2 b7 11 e2 c7 12 e5 e7 13 f4 e8 14 e1 g6 15 g4 h5 16 h3 g7 17 c4 d8 18 c5! and not now 18 ... bc 19 bc

xc5+ because of 20 e5! and 21 g5 ±.

b) 8 ... c7 9 c4 and if 9 ... e5?! 10 cd dxd5 11 dc xc5 12 d2 ±.

c) 8 ... e7 9 e5 (otherwise ... e5) 9 ... d8 (9 ... xe5?! 9 de d7 10 f4) 10 d2 d7 11 f4 (11 dxd7!? followed by c4) 11 ... f8 = – Bogoljubow. Black's vital h-pawn is protected, and he can continue with ... f6 and possibly ... c8-d7-e8.

9 e5

a) 9 d2 b7 10 e5 probably transposes.

b) A curiosity is the 3rd Potter-Zukertort match game 1875: 9 c3 (by transposition) 9 ... b7 10 e2 e8 11 f1 cd (a move which met with the approval of Steinitz) 12 ed e8 13 b1 (admission of error) 13 ... c7 14 e1 e4 15 d2 (15 xe4? de 16 e4 e5) 15 ... f5!?, but Steinitz preferred 15 ... d2 followed by ... f6. This shows that some of the QPO ideas were current in London at least, prior to the 1883 tournament.

9 ... b7

10 d2 e7

Or 10 ... a6 11 f4 b5 12 dc xc5 13 f3 e8 14 g3 dxe5 15 xe5 d6 16 d4 e7 17 f4 g6 18 g5 (Dus-Hotimirski v. Nimzowitsch Carlsbad 1907) 18 ... d7 19 xe7 xe7 20 e4 f6 = – Nimzowitsch.

11 f4 f8

11 ... d7? 12 dxd7 bxd7 13 dc xc5 14 xh7+! xh7 15 h5+ h8 16 xg7!

12 f3 e4!

13 h3

13 dxe4 de 14 dxe4 dxe5!

13 ... f5

The game we follow is Euwe-Rubinstein, Mährisch-Ostrau 1923:

14 dxe4 de

15 dxe5 dxe5

Koltanowski prefers 15 ... h6, but Euwe then intended 16 dxc6 dxc6 17 dxc4 and 18 e3 with a strong attack.

16 dxe4+ dxf7

17 fe dxe8

17 ... dxe5 can be met by 18 dxe5+ or 18 e3.

18 dxe8 dxe8

19 dxe8 dxe6!

20 dxf1 dxd7?

20 ... dxf1 21 dxf1 dxe5 might save Black, as White cannot link his rooks — Euwe.

21 dxd1 dxe5

21 ... dxf1 22 dxf1 cd would have given plenty of counterplay — Koltanowski.

22 d5! dxe4

23 de+ dxe6 24 dxd8 dxe5 25 c4 dxe8 26 d1d5 f4 27 h3 fe 28 dxe3 e2 (better 28 ... dxf6 — Euwe) 29 dxe2 dxe3 30 e3 g6 31 dxf4 dxe7 32 dxe6 dxf5 33 dxf6+ dxe8 34 dxe8+ dxe8 35 dxf5 e3 36 e5+ dxe7 37 dxe5+ 1-0.

B

Lines without ... e6

1 d4 dxf6

2 dxf3 d5

3 e3

B1 3 ... g6

B2 3 ... c5

Other lines without ... e6 are:

a) 3 ... dxd7 4 dxd2 (4 c3; 4 d3)

4 ... c5 transposing to B2, unless White tries Koltanowski's suggestion 5 dxe5!

b) 3 ... c6 4 d3 g6 5 dxd2 dxe7 6 0-0 (6 c3 dxd7 7 e4 de gives White nothing; Schneider-Benites, Moscow 1956) 6 ... 0-0 7 e4 de 8 dxe4 dxe4 9 dxe4 dxe4 10 c3 dxd7 11 h3 dxe6 12 dxe1 dxe8 13 dxf4 dxe5 14 dxe2 dxe5 15 dxc2 dxd5 16 dxe4 dxe4 17 dxe4 dxd5 18 dxd5 cd ½:½ Aronson-Stolyar, 24th USSR Ch 1957. Hardly the last word!

B1

3 ... g6

The Colle formation is not very good for White against this King's Indian set-up. This is a good reason why White should not go 3 e3 unless Black has played ... e6.

4 d3 dxe7

5 dxd2

5 0-0 should transpose.

5 ... dxd7

The most flexible reply, though 5 ... 0-0 (6 b3 dxf5! = MCO) or 5 ... c5 6 c3 will generally transpose to lines below. Exceptionally, the game Solmanis-Holmov, ½-final 17th USSR Ch 1949, went 5 ... 0-0 6 c3 c5 7 0-0 b6 8 e4 cd 9 e5 dxe5 10 cd dxf4 11 dxb1 dxd7 12 g3 dxe3+ 13 dxe2 dxe4 14 dxb3 f6 and White was under pressure.

6 0-0

6 b3 has also been played. Then:

a) 6 ... e5!? 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 de dxe4 9 f4! dxe4+ (9 ... dxe3 10 dxf3) 10 g3 dxe3 11 dxf1! dxe5 12 dxf3!? (12 dxf3 is more solid) 12 ... dxe5 13 fe

dxe5 14 dxb1 dxe3 15 dxe2! (15 dxe2 dxc2+ leads to a draw.) 15 ... d4 (The White king can now escape to c1 against 15 ... dxc2+.) 16 dxe4 dxc2+ 17 dxf2 dxe4 18 dxe4 dxf5 (18 ... f5!? followed by ... c5 was the last chance.) 19 d3 dxb4 20 dxf6+ and wins; Sultan Khan-Alexander, British Ch 1931.

b) 6 ... c5 7 dxb2 0-0 8 h3? (correct is 8 0-0 e5 9 de dxe4 10 e4 = Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 8 ... cd 9 ed dxe5 10 g3 dxc7 11 dxe2 dxc5! 12 dxe5 dxd3+ 13 dxd3 dxf5 14 dxc1 dxc8 15 dxe3 dxd6 16 c3 dxe8 17 f4 g5! 18 0-0 gf 19 dxf4 dxe6 20 dxf3 dxf4 21 gf dxe8 22 dxf2 dxe8+ 23 dxe2 dxe6 f Rellstab-Petrov, Kemerli 1937.

6 ... c5

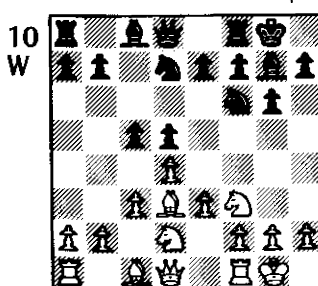
Or 6 ... 0-0! when:

a) 7 b3 e5!? 8 de (8 dxe5!?) 8 ... dxe4 9 dxb1 dxe5 = Dus-Hotmirsky v. Aratovsky, ½-final 17th USSR Ch 1949.

b) 7 c3 e5 8 de dxe4 9 dxc2 dxe5 f Stahlberg-Böök, Stockholm 1952.

c) 7 c4!? could be considered.

7 c3 0-0(10)



This position is a reversed Catalan in which White has an extra move

and has his bishop posted on d3 instead of e2. Therefore he has little to fear, and may proceed:

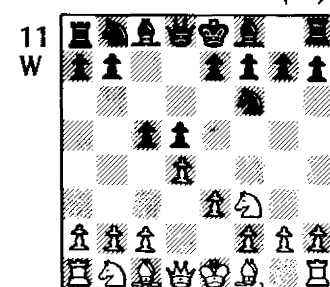
a) 8 dxe2 dxe8? (Koltanowski's 8 ... dxc7 is critical.) 9 dxe5 (or 9 e4 Colle-Fairhurst, Scarborough 1927) 9 ... dxe5 10 de dxd7 11 f4 dxb6 12 dxf3 e6 13 c4! ± Seitz-O'Hanlon, Nice 1930.

b) 8 b4!? (or 8 b3) is more in the anti-Catalan spirit, e.g. 8 ... cb (8 ... b6!) 9 cb (Black's dxe7 stands poorly now.) 9 ... dxe8 10 dxb2 dxd6 11 dxb3 dxb6 12 a4 dxf5 13 dxf5 gf 14 b5 dxc4 = Prins-Landau, Zandvoort 1936.

c) 8 e4 de (8 ... cd 9 e5 ±) 9 dxe4 dxe4 10 dxe4 cd 11 dxd4 dxc5 12 dxc2 dxc7 = Nestler-Pachman, Venice 1950.

B2

3 ... c5(11)



4 c3

White can also play:

a) 4 dc, which is a Queen's Gambit Accepted with reversed colours and an extra tempo; because of this 3 ... c5 is slightly suspect. Guimard-Shainswit, New York 1951, continued 4 ... dxe5 5 dxd2 (5 dxd2!? dxc5 6 dxe3 — Dr. Dunhaupt,

MCO) 5 ... ♗xc5 6 a3 g6 7 c4 ♕g7 8 b4 ♗c7 9 ♖b2 0-0 10 ♖c1 ± (but ½:½, 35)

b) 4 b3 when:

b1) 4 ... ♖c6 5 ♖b2 ♕g4 6 ♕e2 e6 7 0-0 cd 8 ed ♖d6 (8 ... ♖c8!? Halprin-Pillsbury, Vienna 1898) 9 ♕e5 ♖f5 10 ♖d3 ♕g6 11 ♗h1 ♗c7 12 f4 ♕e4 13 ♖d2 ± Dus-Hotimirski v. Spielmann, Carlsbad 1907.

b2) 4 ... cd 5 ed ♖c6 6 ♖b2 ♕g4 7 ♖bd2 e6 8 ♖d3 (8 ♕e2! - Keres) 8 ... ♖d6 9 h3 ♖h5 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖e1? (11 a3) 11 ... ♖b4! ♣ Gasic-Keres, Sarajevo 1972.

4 ... ♖bd7

5 ♖bd2

5 ♖d3 is playable too, but after 5 ... e6 White must return to normal lines (chapter 3) because there is nothing in 6 ♗a4?! ♕e7 7 ♖bd2 0-0 8 0-0 ♗c7 9 e4 cd 10 cd de 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♖xe4 ♖f6 13 ♖d3 ♖d7 ♣ Nestler-Szabados, Venice 1950.

5 ... ♗c7

Only this gives the variation an independent character. 5 ... g6 see B1; 5 ... e6 see chapter 3.

6 ♖d3

If 6 ♗a4 e6 7 ♖d3 Black can play 7 ... ♕e7 (note to White's 5th) or:

a) 7 ... ♖d6 8 dc ♖xc5 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗h4 ♕e7 Colle-Spielmann, Bled 1931.

b) 7 ... c4 8 ♖b1 a6 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 b5 11 ♗d1 ♖b7 - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.

Also 6 ... g6!? is playable, though after 7 c4! Colle-Rubinstein, Rotterdam 1931, continued 7 ... ♕g7? (7

... cd first) 8 cd ♖xd5 9 e4! ♖5b6 10 ♗c2! ♗d6 11 a4! ±.

6 ... e5

7 e4

7 de is innocuous. Makagonov-Fridstein, ½-final 15th USSR Ch 1947, went 7 ... ♖xe5 8 ♖xe5 ♗xe5 9 ♖f3 ♗c7 10 b3 ♕e7 11 c4 dc 12 bc 0-0 13 0-0 ♕g4 14 ♖b2 ♖ad8 15 ♗c2 =.

7 ... ♖xe4

8 ♖xe4 de

9 ♖xe4 ♖f6

Koltanowski-Sebestany, Barcelona 1934, went instead 9 ... cd 10 cd ♖b4+ 11 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 12 ♗xd2 0-0 13 ♖c1 and now only 13 ... ♗b8 would avoid the loss of material.

10 ♖c2

And now:

a) 10 ... ♖d6 11 de ♖xe5 12 ♗e2 0-0 13 ♖xe5 ♖e8 14 f4 ± - Tartakower.

b) 10 ... ed 11 0-0 ♕e7 would be more prudent - Tartakower.

c) Colle-Stoltz, Bled 1931, went 10 ... cd!? 11 0-0 (11 cd? ♖b4+ 12 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 13 ♗xd2 ed =) 11 ... dc? (11 ... ♖d6 avoids the worst.) 12 ♖xe5! ♖d6 13 ♖a4+ ♗f8 14 ♖f4 ♕g4 (14 ... ♗g8 is slightly better) 15 ♖g6+! ♗g8 16 ♖xd6 ♖xd1 17 ♖xc7 ♖xa4 18 ♖xh8 ♖d5 (18 ... ♗xh8 19 b3) 19 ♖a5 c2 20 ♖d2 ♗xh8 21 ♖he1 ♗g8 22 ♖ac1 ♖c8 23 ♖e4 ♖d7 24 ♖d4 ♖e6 25 b3 b5 26 ♖a5 g5 27 ♖d2 ♖c6 28 ♖cxc2 ♖a6 29 b4 ♖d6 30 a3 h6 31 ♖c5 a6 32 ♖c7 ♖d7 33 ♖e5 ♗h7 34 h3 h5 35 ♖b2 ♗g6 36 ♖c6 1-0.

C

Black avoids ... c5

1 d4 ♖f6

2 ♖f3 e6

3 e3 d5

4 ♖d3

There is no clear pattern to the lines where Black avoids ... c5.

C1 4 ... b6

C2 4 ... ♖e7

C3 4 ... ♖d6

C1

4 ... b6

Not as good as the lines in chapter 4, because the pawn at d5 is in the way of the bishop.

5 ♖bd2

Or 5 0-0 ♖b7 6 b3 ♖bd7 7 ♖b2 (compare A):

a) 7 ... ♖d6 8 c4 0-0 transposes to the Keres line against the Queen's Indian Defence, which is one of the best ways of handling that defence, e.g. Keres-Taimanov, Tallinn 1975.

b) 7 ... ♖e7 8 ♖bd2 0-0 9 ♗e2 (here or last move c2-c4 is still good.) 9 ... ♖e4 10 ♖ad1 f5 11 ♖e5 (11 c4!?) 11 ... ♖xe5 12 de ♖xd2 13 ♖xd2 ♗e8 with complex play ahead on both wings; Gibson-Sultan Khan, British Ch 1931.

5 ... ♖b7

If 5 ... ♖a6?! 6 c4! ♖d6 (6 ... dc 7 ♖xc4) 7 0-0 0-0 8 b3 c6 9 ♗e2 ♖e8 10 ♖b2 ♖bd7 11 ♖e5 ♖c8 12 f4 Koltanowski-Sunyer, Sitges 1934; Black's ♖a6 is not well placed.

6 ♗e2

Alternatively:

a) 6 0-0 and if 6 ... ♖e7 7 b3 0-0 8 ♖b2 followed by c4 is the Queen's

Indian again.

b) 6 ♖e5!? ♖d6 (6 ... a6 7 f4 c5 8 c3 ♖c6 9 ♗f3 ± Colle-Sultan Khan, Hastings 1930-31) 7 f4 ♖e4 (7 ... 0-0 8 ♗f3!? - ECO; compare chapter 8 again.) 8 ♗f3 ♖xd2 (8 ... f5? 9 ♗h5+) 9 ♖xd2 ♗h4+ 10 g3 ♗h3 11 ♖f1 ♗f5 12 ♖d3 ½:½ Koltanowski-Spielmann, Sitges 1934. Koltanowski said that 10 ♗f2 might be playable, heading for the endgame.

6 ... ♖e7

7 e4 de

8 ♖xe4 ♖bd7

9 0-0 0-0 ±

And here White has:

a) 10 ♖d1 ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♗xe4 ♖f6 13 ♗c6 ± Pirc-Stahlberg, Moscow 1935.

b) 10 ♖e1 and now:

b1) 10 ... ♖e8 (Franklin-Najdorf, Hastings 1971-72) 11 ♖eg5 ♖xf3 (or 11 ... ♖d6 12 ♖e5 ±) 12 ♗xf3 ± - Franklin, ECO.

b2) 10 ... ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♗xe4 ♖f6 13 ♗b7 ♗c8 14 ♗c6 ± Franklin-Markland, Hastings 1971-72.

C2

4 ... ♖e7

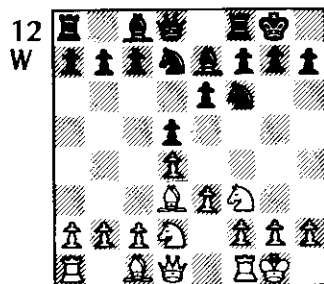
5 ♖bd2 0-0

Or 5 ... ♖bd7 6 0-0 b6?! (7 c3 or 7 b3 would be normal.) 7 ... ♖xe5 8 de ♖d7 9 f4 ♖c5! 10 ♖b5+ ♖d7 11 ♖e2 a6 12 c4 dc 13 ♖xc4 g6 14 ♗c2! ± Flohr-Noteboom, Hamburg 1930.

6 0-0

Riumin-Budo, 7th USSR Ch 1931, went 6 ♗e2 ♖bd7 7 e4 de 8 ♖xe4

Qxe4?! (8 ... b6!? intending ... Qb7
±) 9 Qxe4 Qf6 10 Qh4 c5 11 dc
Qxc5 12 0-0 ± with the initiative.
6 ... Qbd7(12)



7 e4

Or 7 Qe2 b6 8 e4 de 9 Qxe4 Qb7
10 Qxf6 Qxf6 11 Ed1 (to protect
d4 indirectly) 11 ... Qd5!? 12 Qg5!
h6 13 c4 Qa5 14 Qf4 Koltanowski-
Cherta, Spain 1935.

7 ... de

8 Qxe4 Qxe4

9 Qxe4 Qf6 10 Qd3 c5 (Now we
see why Black should have played
this earlier! If 10 ... b6 ECO gives
11 Qe2 Qb7 12 Ed1 ±.) 11 dc!
(obtaining a Q-side majority) 11 ...
Qxc5 12 Qg5 Qe7 13 Qc2 Qc7 (13
... b6? 14 Qxf6 Qxf6 15 Qe4) 14
Ed1 Ed8 15 Qe5 Qd7 (better 15
... h6) 16 Qxh7+! Qxh7 17 Qxf6
Qxf6 (17 ... Qe8 holds out longer.)
18 Qh5+ Qg8 19 Qxf7+ 1-0 Colle-
Buerger, Hastings 1928.

C3

4 ... Qd6

5 Qbd2 Qbd7

Alternatively:

a) 5 ... b6 6 e4 ± Koltanowski-
Ryden, 1957 (blindfold simul).

b) 5 ... c6 6 0-0 Qbd7 7 Ee1 0-0 8

e4 de 9 Qxe4 Qxe4 10 Qxe4 Qc7
11 c3 (Koltanowski-Silverman,
Birmingham 1937) 11 ... Qf6 or 11
... b6 – Koltanowski.

6 0-0

Or 6 e4 de 7 Qxe4 b6 (7 ... Qxe4
8 Qxe4 0-0 9 0-0 see note b) to
Black's 6th) 8 Qxd6+!? (instead of
8 0-0 Qb7 = Blackburne-Lasker,
London 1879) 8 ... cd 9 Qf4 ± ECO.

6 ... e5?!

After 6 ... 0-0 7 e4 Koltanowski
analysed:

a) 7 ... e5?! 8 ed ed 9 Qe4 Qe5 10
Qg5 Qg4 11 Qxf6 Qxf3 (11 ... gf 12
Qe2) 12 Qxd8 Qxd1 13 Qxd6
Qxd3 14 Qfxd1 Qfxd8 15 Qxd3
Qxd6 16 Qxd4 and Black cannot
copy any longer.

b) 7 ... de 8 Qxe4 Qxe4 9 Qxe4 f5
(9 ... e5 10 de Qxe5 11 Qxe5 Qxe5
12 Qxh7+! Qxh7 13 Qh5+) 10 Qd3
e5 11 Qc4+ Qh8 12 Qg5 Qe8 13 de
Qxe5 (13 ... Qxe5 14 Qh5 Qf6 15
Qh4 Qe7 16 Qd2 h6 17 Qae1 Qe4
18 Qh5) 14 Ee1 ± e.g. 14 ... h6
(14 ... Qg6 15 Qxe5; 14 ... f4 15
Qd4) 15 Qf4 hg 16 Qxe5 Qxe5 17
Qxe5 Qg6 18 Qd5 c6 19 Qd4 with
pressure on the open central files.
Also good is 11 Qg5 ± Alekhine-
Köhnlein, Dusseldorf 1908.

7 e4! de

7 ... ed 8 e5 forking two pieces.

8 Qxe4 Qxe4

9 Qxe4

Black has a difficult game already,
because castling loses a pawn to the
typical Colle trap 9 ... 0-0?! 10 de
Qxe5 11 Qxe5 Qxe5 12 Qxh7+
Koltanowski-Golmayo, Sitges 1934.

Summary

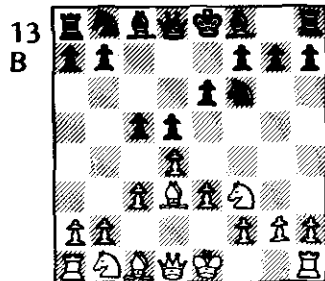
The Colle-Zukertort variation (A)
leads to interesting and complex
middle games, offering objectively
level chances. The King's Indian set-
up against the Colle is probably
good, but Black should aim for ...
e5 rather than the reversed Catalan.
The ... c5, ... Qc7 and ... e5 plan is

somewhat in White's favour — but
Qa4 (to prevent ... e5) is
inadvisable. Finally the lines in C
by and large show the inadvisability
of Black's omitting ... c5 if he
intends to develop his bishop on e7
or d6. In the next two chapters we
proceed to those lines of the Colle
that were the most popular in its
heyday (late twenties and thirties).

3 Main Line Colle (with ... d5)

1 d4 ♖f6
2 ♘f3 e6
3 e3 d5
4 ♕d3 c5
5 c3(13)

Of the several move-orders that lead to the diagram position, the above is probably the most precise from both players' points of view. Early deviations were dealt with in chapter 2, and lines without ... d5 are in the next chapter.



The variations which follow are distinguished by Black's development of the queen's knight (to c6 or d7) and the king's bishop (to d6 or e7). Although some transpositions are possible, we shall look at the variations in the following sequence:

A 5 ... ♖c6 –
A1 with ... ♕d6
A2 with ... ♗e7
B 5 ... ♗bd7 –
B1 with ... ♕d6
B2 with ... ♗e7

Odd-fits in brief:

a) 5 ... ♕d7 6 ♗bd2 ♖c6 7 dc ♖xc5 8 b4 ♕d6 9 b5 ♕d7 10 0-0 a6 11 c4 0-0 12 ♖b2 ± Schlechter-Napier, Monte Carlo 1903.

b) 5 ... ♗e7 6 ♗e5 0-0 7 0-0 b6 8 ♗e2 ♖b7 9 ♗d2 ♗bd7 10 f4 ± Karaklajic-Andric, Belgrade 1961.

c) 5 ... b6!? when:

c1) 6 ♗bd2 ♖b7 7 ♗e5 ♗bd7 8 f4 ♕d6 9 ♗f3! 0-0 10 0-0 ♖c8 11 g4 ♖c7! 12 g5 ♗xe5 13 fe (13 de ♗e8! 14 ♖xh7+ would give no advantage.) 13 ... ♗e4! 14 h4? (14 ♗xe4 de 15 ♖c4 ±) 14 ... f5 15 ef gf 16 g6 f5 17 ♗xe4 de 18 ♗g3 ♖f6 19 h5 hg 20 ♖f2 ♗f8 21 ♗c4 cd 22 ♗e5 dc 23 bc (23 ♗g4 ♖d7 24 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 ♣) 23 ... ♖h7 24 ♕a3 ♖xh5 25 ♖f1 f4! ♣ 26 ♗g4 fg 27 ♗xf6+ ♗h8 28 ♗xh5 ♗d7 29 ♗xg3 ♗g5 30 ♗g2 ♗xe3 was the continuation in Colle v. Znosko-Borowski, Nice 1930 (0-1, 40).

c2) 6 0-0 ♖b7 7 ♗e5 ♕d6 8 f4 ♗c7 9 ♕d2 ♗c6 10 ♗e1 a6 11 ♗d2 ± Damjanovic-Korchnoi, Palma de Mallorca 1969.

A1

5 ... ♖c6
6 ♗bd2 ♕d6

Alternatively:

a) In Gottlif-Romanovsky, Tourney of Leningrad Masters 1930, Black tried 6 ... ♗b6 7 0-0 ♕d7. If his intention was to castle ♗-side, he soon thought better of it: 8 dc ♖xc5 9 e4 ♖d8 10 ed ed 11 ♗b3 ♗e7 12 h3 0-0 13 ♗e3 ♗c7 (completing the ignominious retreat) 14 ♗bd4 and the position is a Tarrasch French in which Black's pieces are too passively placed to compensate for the isolation of his d-pawn (1-0, 42).

b) 6 ... a6 7 0-0 ♗c7 8 ♗e2 ♗e7 9 dc ♖xc5 10 e4 ± Przepiorka-Gilfer, Hamburg 1930.

c) 6 ... cd 7 ed ♕d6 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♖e1 ♗c7 (9 ... ♖e8 10 ♗e5) note b1) to Black's 7th.

With ... ♕d6 Black adopts his most classical minor piece set-up. The position is in effect a reversed Queen's Gambit, Semi-Slav (Chigorin's Half-Meran) in which the extra tempo means a lot to White: he will be the first to advance his e-pawn.

7 0-0

7 e4 is premature because after 7 ... cd 8 cd de 9 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 10 ♗xe4 ♖b4+ the position becomes too simplified and White has an isolated d-pawn.

7 ♗e2 0-0 8 dc!? (8 0-0 below) 8 ... ♖xc5 9 e4 is an attempt to get on with the centre push: if 9 ... ♗c7 either 10 0-0 (transposing) or 10 e5!?. Koltanowski-Domenech, Sitges 1934, went instead 9 ... de 10 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♕d7 (11 ... ♗c7!?) 12 0-0 ♖c8 13 ♖f4 ±.

If 7 dc ♖xc5 8 b4?! (8 0-0 0-0 below) 8 ... ♕d6 9 b5 ♗e7 (9 ... ♗e5! ♣ ECO) 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♗b3 e5 12 e4 ♖e8 (Rozic-Krestini, Yugoslavia 1932) is unclear.

7 ... 0-0(14)

Black can transpose by 7 ... ♗c7 8 dc ♖xc5 9 e4 0-0, but should avoid:

a) 7 ... e5?! was played in the stem-game Charousek-Suchting, Berlin 1897 (see p. 7); only thirty years later was the variation rediscovered and popularised by Colle!

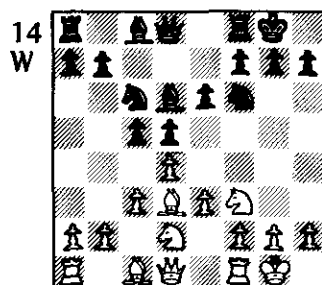
Charousek-Suchting continued 8 dc ♖xc5 9 e4 d4?! 10 ♗b3 ♖b6 11 cd ed 12 e5! ♗d7 13 ♖g5 ♗c7 14 ♖c1 ±, but possibly 9 ... de 10 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♗xd1 12 ♖xd1 ♖g4 (12 ... f6 13 b4 ♖b6 14 a4 ±) 13 h3 ♖xf3 14 ♖xf3 would have restricted White to a minimal endgame advantage. Neikirkh and Tsvetkov, the Bulgarian analysts, suggest that White would do better with 8 de ♗xe5 9 ♗xe5 ♖xe5 10 f4 ♖c7 11 e4 de 12 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 13 ♖xe4 ♗xd1 14 ♖xd1 e.g. 14 ... ♖b8 15 ♖e3 b6 16 ♖c6+ ♗e7 17 ♖e1 ±.

Another idea is 8 e4 'and White will use the e-file first' – Koltanowski. b) 7 ... cd 8 ed produces an Exchange Variation of the Caro-

Kann with Black's queen's bishop locked inside his pawn structure. Two examples after 8 ... ♖c7 9 ♖e1:

b1) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♖e2 ♖e8 11 ♖e5 ♖e7 12 ♖df3 ♖df7 13 ♖g5! ♖f8 14 ♖xh7! ± Colle-Soultanbeieff, Liege 1930.

b2) 9 ... ♗d7 10 ♖e2 0-0-0 11 ♖e5 ♗e8 12 ♖df3 ♗d7 13 ♗d2 ♖f8 14 c4 f6 15 cd ed 16 ♖xc6 bc 17 b4 followed by ♖fc1, ♖ab1, a4 and b5, opening up Black's ♗-side — Koltanowski.



A11 8 dc

A12 8 ♖e2!?

Other tries:

a) 8 b3 (inconsistent) 8 ... e5! Wahlruch-Atkins, London 1922.

b) 8 h3 ♖e7 (8 ... e5!?!; 8 ... b6 Vidmar-Bogoljubow, London 1922) 9 ♖e2 e5 10 dc ♗xc5 11 e4 ♗e6! (11 ... ♖h5 12 ed! ♖g3 13 ♖e1 ♖xf1 14 ♖xf1 ♖d8 15 ♖xe5) 12 ed ♗xd5 = Vidmar-Reti, London 1922.

c) 8 e4 and now:

c1) 8 ... de 9 ♖xe4 cd 10 ♖xf6+ gf (10 ... ♖xf6?? 11 ♗g5) 11 ♗h6 with attacking chances; Romanovsky-Rotlevi, St Petersburg 1909.

c2) 8 ... cd! when:

c21) if 9 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 10 cd de 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♗xe4 ♗xh2+! the laugh is on White for a change.

c22) 9 cd de 10 ♖xe4 ♗e7! is assessed as ♠ by Pachman because of the isolated d-pawn (11 ♖eg5 h6!). Or possibly 10 ... ♖xe4 11 ♗xe4 ♗d7 12 ♖e1 h6 13 ♗b1 ♖c7 14 ♖d3 f5 15 ♗d2 with complications; Lukic-Djantar, Yugoslav Ch 1959.

A11

8 dc

This is designed to avoid the isolated d-pawn and to decoy the black king's bishop away from ♗-side defence. The move was played by Capablanca in a simultaneous display in 1914, but the credit for its development rightly goes to Colle who rediscovered it.

8 ... ♗xc5

9 e4

Thus White achieves his first objective.

An experimental idea was 9 b4!? ♗d6 10 a3 e5 11 e4 ♗g4 12 ed ♖xd5 13 ♖e4 ♗e7 with an unclear position; Colle-Euwe, match 1924.

9 ... ♖c7

To prevent e4-e5. Others:

a) 9 ... d4? 10 ♖b3 ± Koltanowski-Domenech, Barcelona 1934.

b) 9 ... ♖b6!? might be met by 10 e5, angling for a sacrifice on h7 — Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.

c) 9 ... e5 and now:

c1) 10 ♖e2 ♖e8 (Kostic-Marshall, Stockholm 1937) 11 h3!? ± — Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.

c2) 10 ed when:

c21) 10 ... ♖xd5?! 11 ♖e2 ♗g4 (11 ... ♗b6 12 ♖e4 or 11 ... ♖e8 12 ♗c4 ♖d7 13 ♖g5 ♖f8 14 ♖de4 ± Colle-Rubinstein, Budapest 1926) 12 ♖e4 ♖fd8 13 ♖xf6+ gf 14 ♗e4 ± Colle-Sir George Thomas, Nice 1930.

c22) 10 ... ♖xd5 11 ♖e4 ♗e7 12 ♖g3 f5 13 ♗c4 ♗e6 14 ♖e1 e4 15 ♗g5 ♖h8 16 ♗xe7 ♖cxe7 17 ♖d4 ± Colle-Euwe, 1st match game 1928.

d) 9 ... de (or 9 ... ♖xe4) 10 ♖xe4 when:

d1) 10 ... ♗e7 11 ♖e2 ♖c7 12 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 13 ♗g5 ♖c7 14 ♖e4 g6 (Colle-Maroczy, San Remo 1930) 15 h4! e5 16 ♖e3 ± Toth and Halupetsky.

d2) 10 ... ♖xe4 11 ♗xe4 and now:

d21) 11 ... ♖xd1 12 ♖xd1 with a ♗-side majority and a slight lead in time. Colle-Rubinstein, Berlin 1926, continued 12 ... f6 13 b4 ♗e7 14 a3 a5 15 b5 ±.

d22) 11 ... ♗e7 12 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 13 ♗f4 likewise favoured White in Rudenko-Zubarev, All-Union tourney of Spartak clubs 1939.

d23) 11 ... ♖c7 12 ♖g5 h6 13 ♖h7+ ♖f8 14 ♗c2 e5 15 ♖h5 ± (threats are ♖e4 and ♗xh6) Gilg-Holzhausen, Breslau 1925.

e) 9 ... ♗e7 and 9 ... ♗b6 have been played, but the loss of tempo helps White.

10 ♖e2(15)

This renews the e5 threat. Probably 10 ed is too quiet, e.g. 10 ... ♖xd5 11 ♖e4 ♗e7 = as recommended by Euwe and Pachman.

However Colle's opponents used

to reply 10 ... ed!? reaching positions akin to the Tarrasch French which are well-known nowadays (e.g. the 1974 Karpov-Korchnoi match). Compared with the line 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 ed ed 5 ♖g3 ♖c6 6 ♗b5 ♗d6 7 dc ♗xc5 8 0-0 ♖ge7 9 ♖b3 Black here has his knight on f6 which gives him chances based on ... ♖e4 or ... ♖g4. Still, the following examples should be reviewed in the light of modern ideas in the French:

10 ... ed 11 ♖b3 (11 h3? ♗xh3! ♠ Scafarelli-Lundin, Helsinki 1952) and now:

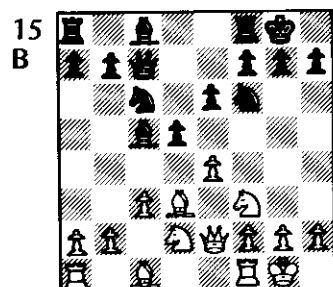
a) 11 ... ♗d6 12 h3 ♖e8 13 ♖bd4 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♗d7 15 ♖f3 ± a6 16 ♖f5 ♗e5 17 ♗e3 ♖e4 18 ♗ad1 ♖e6 19 ♗c2 ♗c6 20 ♗d4 ♖f6 21 ♖h5 ♗xd4 22 ♖xd4 ♖h6 23 ♖e2 ♖e8 24 ♖fe1 ♗d7 25 ♗d3 ♖f8 26 ♖e3 ♖f6 27 ♖f5 (1-0, 42) Colle-Yates, Budapest 1926.

b) 11 ... ♗b6 12 ♖c2 ♖e8 13 ♗g5 ♖e4 14 ♖ae1 ♖f5 = (Black has an easy development.) 15 ♗e3 ♗g6 16 ♖h4 (16 ♗xb6!?!; 16 ♖bd4!?) 16 ... ♖xf2!? 17 ♗xf2 (17 ♖xf2 ♖xe3 18 ♖xe3 ♖f4+) 17 ... ♗xf2+ 18 ♖xf2 ♖b6+ 19 ♖g3 ♖e3+ 20 ♖xe3 ♖xe3+ 21 ♖f3 ♖g5+ 22 ♖h3 ♖e5 23 ♖g3 ♖h6 Colle-Kashdan, Bled 1931. Now White should have played 24 ♗xg6 ♖xg6 25 ♖xg6 hg 26 ♖g3 and Black probably has nothing better than 26 ... ♖g5+ 27 ♖h3 ♖h6 repeating positions — Koltanowski.

10 ... ♗d6

Others:

a) 10 ... ♗g4 is a major alternative:



a1) 11 h3 Qge5 and now:
 a11) 12 Qxe5 Qxe5 13 Qc2? (13 ed ed 14 $\text{Qf3} = -$ Sokolsky; 14 ... $\text{Qg6!} -$ Koltanowski) 13 ... d4! 14 cd Qxd4 15 Qb3 b6 16 Qf3 Qa6! 17 Qxa6 Qxf3+ 18 gf Qg3+ 19 Qh1 Qxf3+ 20 Qg1 Qg3+ 21 Qh1 Qxh3+ 22 Qg1 Qe5! 0-1 Yasvoin-Kopayev, Team Ch of VTsPS 1947.
 a12) 12 Qc2 b6 13 Qe1 (13 Qb3 Qa6! 14 Qxa6 Qxf3+ 15 gf $\text{Qg3+} -$ Neikirch and Tsvetkov) 13 ... d4 14 Qxe5 Qxe5 15 cd Qxd4 16 Qb3 Qa6! 17 Qd1 with a double-edged game. Halibeily-Lipnitsky, USSR 1954, continued 17 ... $\text{Qxf2!?$ 18 Qxf2 Qfd8 19 Qd2 Qc4 20 e5 Qxd2 21 Qxd2 Qc5+ 22 Qe3 Qb4 23 Qxh7+! with White escaping.
 a13) 12 ed ed 13 $\text{Qxe5 Qxe5!?$ = - Yudovich.
 a2) 11 ed ed 12 Qb3 Qb6 13 Qg5 (recommended by Ravinsky) is correct, bringing about a more favourable form of Tarrasch French than in the note to White's 10th. The black king's knight cannot reach e4 and the white queen's bishop will achieve the standard

manoeuvre Qg5-h4-g3 . If 13 ... Qd7 14 Qh4 Qae8 15 Qc2 h6 16 Qg3 and 17 Qae1 , or if 13 ... Qce5 (or 13 ... Qge5) then 14 Qf4! is promising - Harding.

b) 10 ... e5? 11 ed Qxd5 12 Qxh7+ Qxh7 13 Qe4+ and 14 Qxd5 .

c) 10 ... de 11 Qxe4 Qe7 12 $\text{Qfg5} \pm$ - Neikirch and Tsvetkov.

d) 10 ... Qe8? 11 e5 and now:

d1) 11 ... Qd7 12 Qb3 (12 Qe1?! f6! 13 Qg5? Qxe5! - Winter-Lasker, Nottingham 1936) 12 ... Qb6 (12 ... Qf8! which White meets by Qdb4 , Qf4 or Qb5) 13 Qf4 f6 14 Qae1 Qdxe5? (14 ... Qf8 was essential) 15 Qxe5 Qxe5 16 Qxh7+ Qf8 (16 ... Qxh7 17 Qh5+ and 18 Qxe8) 17 Qg6 Qd8 18 Qh5 Qe7 19 Qd4! Qd7 20 Qxe5! fe (20 ... Qh8 21 Qf5+) 21 Qxe5 1-0 Koltanowski-O'Hanlon, Dublin (match) 1937.

d2) 11 ... Qg4 12 Qb3 Qe7 (12 ... Qb6 13 Qf4 f6 14 h3) 13 Qe1 f6 14 ef Qxf6 (14 ... gf!? - 64) 15 h3 Qge5 16 Qxe5 Qxe5 17 Qxh7+ winning a pawn (Bellavenets-Fomina, USSR women's zonal 1975) because if 17 ... Qxh7 18 Qc2+ .

11 Qe1 Qg4

12 h3

Not 12 Qf1 de 13 Qxe4 f5 - Engelmann-Soultanbeieff, Belgian Ch 1934.

12 ... Qge5

13 Qxe5

13 Qc2 h6 14 Qxe5 Qxe5 15 Qf3 Qxf3+ 16 Qxf3 de 17 $\text{Qxe4 f5} =$ Gilg-Alekhine, Kecskemet 1927.

13 ... Qxe5

14 ed

Moving the bishop loses needful time:

a) 14 Qb1? Qd7 15 ed ed 16 Qf3 Qae8 - Colle-Ahues, Frankfurt 1930.

b) 14 Qc2 d4 15 cd Qxc2 16 de Qxe5 17 Qf3 Qxe2 18 Qxe2 (Yudovich-Kirillov, 7th USSR Ch 1931) 18 ... $\text{Qc7} \mp -$ ECO.

14 ... ed

15 $\text{Qf3} \pm$

White has a solid position, while Black must either sacrifice or defend his IQP. White can concentrate his forces against the weakness by Qe3 , Qad1 , Qc2-b3 and doubling rooks on the d-file. Examples:

a) 15 ... Qxd3 16 $\text{Qxd3 Qc4!?$ 17 Qd1 Qxd3 18 Qxd3 Qfd8! 19 Qe3 Qe6 20 Qad1 ($\frac{1}{2}:\frac{1}{2}$, 44) Koltanowski-Soultanbeieff, 4th match game 1935; White was happy with his game at this stage.

b) 15 ... Qxf3+ 16 Qxf3 Qe6 17 Qe3 and now:

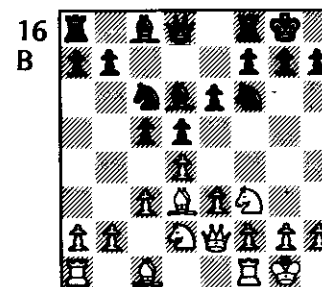
b1) 17 ... Qad8 18 $\text{Qc2 b5!?$ 19 Qd4 Qc5 20 Qad1 b4 21 Qe5 Qd6 22 Qxh7+! Qxh7 23 Qh5+ Qg8 24 Qxg7! Qxg7 25 Qg5+ Qh7 26 $\text{Qd4} \pm \pm$ Koltanowski-Defosse, Belgian Ch 1936.

b2) 17 ... Qe5 (to meet 18 Qd4 by 18 ... Qxd4) and if 18 Qxa7 Qh2+ (18 ... Qxa7 19 Qe3) 19 Qh1 Qxa7 20 g3 Qxg3 21 fg = - Koltanowski. White might do better with 18 Qh1 (threatening both 19 Qxa7 and 19 Qxh7+) 18 ... Qf6 19 Qe2 followed by Qae1 and Qb1 .

A12

8 Qe2!?(16)

This transposition of moves allows (or should one say 'invites?') Black to get his blow in first.



8 ... e5!?

Alternatively:

a) 8 ... Qc7 9 dc returns to A11.

b) 8 ... b6 9 e4 de 10 Qxe4 Qb7 11 Qxf6+ Qxf6 12 $\text{Qg5} \pm$ Filipcic-Vidmar jr., Yugoslav Ch 1945.

c) 8 ... Qd7 9 e4 (9 dc Qxc5) 9 ... cd 10 cd Qb4 11 Qb1 b6 (unclear - ECO) 12 Qe1 Qa6 13 $\text{Qe3 Qc8} \mp -$ Pachman.

9 dc

9 de is inferior. Franklin-Dodson, Ward-Higgs corres 1973-4, continued 9 ... Qxe5 10 Qxe5 Qxe5 11 e4 (11 f4!? - Dodson) 11 ... Qc7 12 h3 Qe8 13 Qf3 Qe6 14 c4 d4 - (0-1, 37).

9 ... Qxc5

10 e4

With some initiative to White, according to Euwe and Pachman. Examples:

a) 10 ... Qe8 11 h3 $\pm -$ Pachman.

b) 10 ... Qg4 11 ed (11 h3 Qh5 Wahl-tuch-Morrison, London 1922) 11 ... Qxd5 12 Qc4 (better 12 Qe4 first - Koltanowski) 12 ... Qd7 13

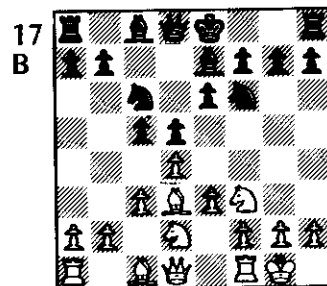
h3 (13 ♖xe5? loses the exchange after 13 ... ♗xe2 14 ♖xd7 ♗xf1.) 13 ... ♗h5 14 ♖e4 ♖xe4 15 ♗xe4 ♗c7 16 ♖h4 ♖e7 17 ♗g5 ♗h8 18 ♗xe7 ♗xe7 19 ♗d3 g6 20 ♖f3 ♗d6 21 ♗c4 (21 g4? f5) 21 ... ♗xc4 22 ♗xc4 ♗xf3 (22 ... f5 23 ♖g5) 23 gf ♗ac8 = Koltanowski-Fine, Hastings 1935-6.

c) 10 ... ♗e7 11 ed ♖xd5 12 ♖b3 ♗d6 13 ♗g5 f6 (13 ... ♗c7 looks safer.) 14 ♗e4 g6 15 ♗xd5+ ♗e6 16 ♗e4 fg 17 ♖c4 ♗f4 18 ♗xe6+ ♗xe6 19 ♖xg5 ± (1-0, 40) Ivanov-Padevsky, Bulgarian Ch 1955.

A2

5 ... ♖c6
6 ♖bd2 ♗e7
7 0-0(17)

Klaman-Vladimirov, USSR 1963, was unclear after 7 a3 0-0 8 b4 b6 9 ♗b2 ♗b7 10 0-0 ♗c7 11 ♗c1 ♗ae8 12 ♗a4 c4 13 ♗b1 ♗d6 14 ♗c2 ♖e7.



7 ... 0-0

Other tries include:

a) 7 ... ♗c7 is known from the game Alekhine-Flohr, Berne 1932: 8 ♗e2 0-0 9 e4 (9 dc ♗xc5 10 e4 see A1) 9 ... de (Here 9 ... cd

permits 10 e5! e.g. 10 ... ♖d7 11 cd ♖b4 12 ♗b5! a6 13 ♗a4 ± Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 10 ♖xe4 cd 11 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 12 cd when:

a1) Flohr played 12 ... ♖xe4 13 ♗xe4 f5?! (13 ... ♗d7 14 ♗f3 ♗c6 = - Alekhine) 14 ♗f3 ♗f6 15 ♗d1 ♗d8 16 ♗e3 ± f4? 17 ♗ac1 ♗d6 18 ♗d2 ♗xd4 19 ♗a5 ♗d7 (19 ... ♗e8 20 ♗c4) 20 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 21 ♗xe6+ etc.

a2) 12 ... ♗d8 (or 12 ... ♗d7 13 ♗g5) 13 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6 14 ♗e4 and White has a strong initiative – Koltanowski. a3) 12 ... ♖d5 might be met by 13 ♗h5 (Koltanowski) or 13 ♗f3 (Alekhine).

In these variations White is well compensated for his isolated d-pawn by his lead in development and the misplaced black queen.

Other alternatives:

b) 7 ... ♗d7 8 dc ♗xc5 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♗e7 12 ♗c2 h6 13 ♗f4 0-0 14 ♗ad1 ♗e8 15 ♗d2 f5 16 ♗c2 ♗c8 17 ♗fe1 ± Colle-Piccardt, Amsterdam 1931.

c) 7 ... c4 8 ♗c2 b5 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 0-0 11 ♗e2 ♗b7 12 ♖fg5 ± – ECO.

8 ♗e2

If 8 dc ♗xc5 see A1, or 8 ♖e5 ♗c7 (8 ... ♖d7!? 9 f4 f5 Estrada-Ciric, Rostov 1961) 9 f4 b6 (9 ... g6!? 10 g4 with a ♗-side attack) 10 ♗f3 a5 11 ♗h3 g6 12 ♖df3 ♖e4 with complications; Romani-Benitez, Lugano 1968.

8 ... b6

Or:

a) 8 ... ♗c7 see Alekhine-Flohr,

above.

b) 8 ... ♗e8 9 dc ♗xc5 10 e4 ♖d7 11 ♖b3 (11 ♗e1? ♖de5! ♢ Riumin-Lasker, Moscow 1936) 11 ... de 12 ♗xe4 ± – ECO.

c) 8 ... ♖d7! (compare A12) 9 e4 cd 10 cd ♖b4 11 ♗b1 b6 12 ♗e1 ♗a6 13 ♗e3 ♗c8 14 a3 ♖c6 (14 ... ♖c2? 15 ♗xc2 ♗xc2 16 ed ± – ECO) 15 b4 de 16 ♖xe4 ♖f6 17 ♖c3 ♖d5 18 ♖xd5 ed is unclear; Kan-Chekhov, 14th USSR Ch 1945.

9 dc

Others:

a) 9 e4?! cd 10 cd ♖b4 ♢.

b) 9 ♗e1 ♗b7 10 b3 ♗c8 11 ♗b2 cd 12 ed ♖d7 13 ♖f1 ♗f6 (but 1-0, 41) Watson-Morrison, London 1922.

9 ... bc

10 e4 ♗c7

Alternatively:

a) 10 ... de?! 11 ♖xe4 ♗b7 12 ♗g5 ♖xe4 13 ♗xe4 g6 14 ♗h6 ♗e8 15 ♗ad1 ♗b6 (Ragozin-Stahlberg, Moscow 1935) 16 ♗f4! (threatening ♖g5) with an attack – ECO.

b) Sliwa-Salo, Helsinki 1952, went instead 10 ... ♗b7 11 ♗e1 ♗e8? 12 ♖g5 h6 13 ed ♗xd5 14 ♖ge4 ♖e5 15 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 16 ♗e4 ♗d7 17 ♖xb7 ♗xb7 18 ♖e4 ±.

After the column, 10 ... ♗c7, White should try 11 ♗e1. The immediate 11 e5? fails to 11 ... ♖g4! 12 ♗e1 f6! 13 ef ♖xf6 14 ♖e4?! ♗d4!! (14 ... de 15 ♗xe4) 15 ♖eg5 (15 cd? ♖xd4; 15 h3 de 16 ♗xe4 ♗xf3!) 15 ... ♖xf2+ 16 ♗h1 ♗xe1 0-1 (17 ♗xe1 h6 18 ♖h3 ♗xf3) Franklin-Carleton, England 1971.

B1

5 ... ♖bd7
6 ♖bd2

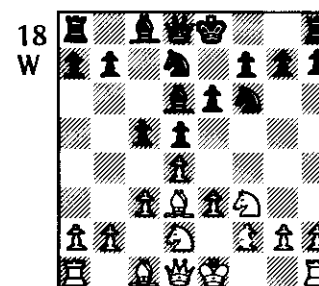
If 6 ♖e5 (Kupchik-Ed.Lasker, Bradley Beach 1928) ECO recommends 6 ... ♖xe5 7 de ♖d7 8 f4 ♗e7 =.

6 ... ♗d6(18)

Other tries:

a) 6 ... ♗c7 (6 ... ♗e7 see B2) 7 0-0 b6 8 e4 de 9 ♖xe4 ♗b7 10 ♗e2 ♗e7 (Bisguier-Portisch, Zagreb 1965) 11 ♗g5! ±.

b) 6 ... b6!? might be met by 7 ♖e5 ♖xe5 (7 ... ♗b7 8 f4 ±) 8 de ♖d7 9 f4 ♗h4+ 10 g3 ♗h3 11 ♗f3 f5 12 ef ♖xf6 13 e4 ♗b7 14 e5 ♖d7 15 ♗f1 ♗f5 16 ♗g2 ♗e7 17 0-0 0-0 18 g4 ♗g6 (18 ... ♗f7 19 ♗e2 and f5) 19 f5 ef 20 gf ♗g5 21 ♖c4! with a dominating spatial advantage for White; Apostopoulos-E.Madsen, Fernschach 1959.



Compared with variation A1, Black is ready to answer dc by ... ♖xc5, and is better placed to blockade an isolated d-pawn (by ... ♖fd5 and ♖f7f6).

7 0-0

a) If 7 e4?! cd (7 ... de is also good.)

8 cd de 9 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 10 ♗xe4 ♖f6
11 ♖c2 ♖b4+ 12 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 13
♗xd2 0-0 14 0-0 b6 15 ♗f4 ♖b7 16
♖ad1 ♖c8 ♢ Goglidze-Lisitsin, 7th
USSR Ch 1931.

b) An interesting alternative is 7
♗e2 ♗c7 (or 7 ... e5!? 8 e4 with a
sharp struggle in the centre) 8 0-0:
b1) 8 ... e5? 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 de
♖xe5 11 f4 and the bishop is
unhappily placed, e.g. 11 ... ♖d6 12
e4! ♖xf4 13 ♖xf4 ♗xf4 14 e5 ± —
Rellstab.

b2) 8 ... 0-0 9 e4 cd 10 cd de 11
♖xe4 when:

b21) 11 ... ♖f4 12 g3 ♖xc1 13
♖fxc1 ♗b6 was unclear in Prins-
Keres, Zandvoort 1936.

b22) 11 ... ♖e7 would be more
prudent.

b23) 11 ... ♖d5 12 ♖xd6 ♗xd6 13
♗e4 ♖7f6 14 ♗h4 and White,
having prevented ... ♖f4, has a fine
attacking position. O'Kelly-Book,
Dubrovnik 1950, continued 14 ...
♖d7 15 ♖e1 ♖fc8 16 ♖e5 g6 17
♖d2 a6 18 ♖ae1 ♖a4 19 b3 ♖b5 20
♖b1 a5 21 ♖g5! ♖e8 22 ♖e4 ♖c6
23 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 24 ♖xe6! ♖d7 25
♖g5! ♖xe5 26 ♗xh7+ ♖f8 27 de
♗b6 28 e6! 1-0.

7 ... 0-0

The pleasant miniature game
Koltanowski-Catala, Spain 1934
went 7 ... b6?! 8 e4 de 9 ♖xe4 ♖xe4
(better 9 ... ♖e7) 10 ♖xe4 ♖b8 11
dc! ♖xc5 12 ♖c6+ ♖e7 13 b4 ♖b7
14 ♖d4 ♗c7 15 ♗h5 ♖d8 16 b5 f6?
(16 ... ♖b7 17 ♖xb7 ±) 17 ♖e1 e5
18 ♖xe5+!! ♖xe5 19 ♖a3+ ♖d6 20
♖e1+ ♖e6 21 ♖f5+ 1-0.

After 7 ... 0-0 White has:

B11 8 e4

B12 8 ♖e1

a) 8 ♗e2!? e5 (8 ... ♗c7 see note to
White's 7th) 9 de (9 e4 ed ♢) 9 ...
♖xe5 10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 11 h3 (11 f4?!
♖c7 12 e4? ♖g4!) 11 ... ♖e8 12 ♖f3
♖c7 ♢ Filipovic-Sokolov, Yugoslavia
1953.

b) 8 h3 (Alekhine) 8 ... ♗c7 (8 ...
e5 was analysed in Tartakower's
Die Hypermoderne Schachpartie.) 9
e4 de 10 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖f6
followed by ... b6, ... ♖b7 — A.
Zeitsa, *Shakhmatny Listok*, 1929.

B11

8	e4!?	cd
9	cd	de
10	♖xe4	♖xe4
11	♖xe4	♗b6!

Or:

a) 11 ... ♖f6 12 ♖d3! (better than
12 ♖c2 h6 13 ♗e2 b6! ♢ Riumin-
Capablanca, Moscow 1936) 12 ...
h6 13 ♖e5 ♗e7 (13 ... b6 14 ♗f3!)
14 ♗f3 ♖b8 15 ♗g3 ♗h8 16 ♖f4 ±
e.g. 16 ... ♖e8 17 ♗g6! f5 18 ♖b5!
♖c7 19 ♗g3 ♖xe5 20 ♖xe5 ♖xb5
21 ♖xb8 ♖xd4 22 ♗d3 ♖d8 23
♖xa7 ♖c6 24 ♗e3 Prins-Grünfeld,
Zandvoort 1936. Black should not
have enough for the exchange,
although he drew in 75 moves.

b) 11 ... h6 12 ♖c2 b6 13 ♗d3 ♖f6
14 ♖e1 ♖b7 15 ♖e5 ♖c8 16 ♖f4
♖b4 17 ♖e2 ♗d5 18 f3 ♖a6 (½:½,
31) Smyslov-Romanishin, USSR
1976.

12 ♖e5

Alternatives include:

a) 12 ♖c2!? ♖f6 13 ♗d3 ♖d7 14

♖e5? (14 a4 ♖c6 ♢ ECO, despite 15
♖g5 g6 16 ♗h3....?) 14 ... ♖b5 15
♗h3 ♗xd4! ♢ e.g. 16 ♖g5 ♗xe5 17
f4 (17 ♖xf6 ♗xh2+!) 17 ... ♗e2 18
♖f2 ♖c5! 0-1 Colle-Bogoljubow,
Berlin 1926.

b) 12 ♖d3 ♖f6 13 ♗e2 ♖d7 14 ♖d1
♖c6 15 ♖e5 and now:

b1) 15 ... ♖d5? 16 ♖g5 ♖e7 17
♖xf6 gf 18 ♖xh7+ ±± Colle-
Tackels, match 1927.

b2) 15 ... h6 16 ♖g4 ♖xg4 17 ♗xg4
f5! = — ECO.

c) 12 ♗e2!?, intending ♖e3, comes
into consideration — *Shakhmatny
Listok*.

12 ... f5

If 12 ... ♖xe5 (or 12 ... ♖f6 13
♖c2) 13 de ♖xe5 14 ♖xh7+ (14
♗h5 f5) 14 ... ♗xh7 15 ♗h5+ and
16 ♗xe5 with attacking chances for
White.

13 ♖xd7

Marshall-Alekhine, Bradley Beach
1929, went now 13 ... ♖xd7 14 ♖f3
♖c6 15 ♖e1 ♗h8! 16 ♖g5 (best?)
16 ... ♖ae8 (16 ... h6!? 17 ♖h4 g5)
17 ♖ac1 (17 b3!?) 17 ... ♖xf3 18
♗xf3 ♗xb2 19 ♖cb1 ♗xa2 20
♖xb7 ♖eb8 21 g3 f4! (0-1, 59).

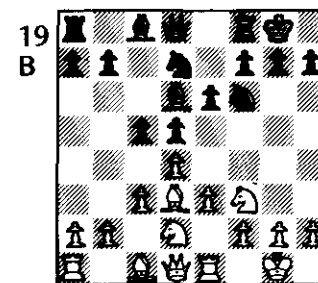
White cannot improve with 13
♖c4 because of 13 ... ♖xh2+! 14
♗xh2 ♗c7+ etc.

B12

8 ♖e1(19) ♗c7

Other possibilities are:

a) 8 ... ♗b6!? 9 b3 (9 e4 cd 10 cd
de 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♖xe4! ECO)
9 ... e5 10 e4 cd 11 cd de 12 ♖xe4
♖xe4 13 ♖xe4 ed 14 ♖b2 ♖f6 15
♖xd4 ♖c5 16 ♖xc5 ♗xc5 17 ♖c1



♗a5 18 ♗d2 ♗b6 = Fine-Keres,
Kemerli 1937.

b) 8 ... ♖e8?! 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4
♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 cd (better 11 ... ♖f6
± Tartakower and Du Mont) and
now White's correct plan,
objectively, is 12 ♖xd4 or 12 cd.
Colle, however, won a brilliancy
prize against O'Hanlon (at Nice
1930) with 12 ♖xh7+! ♗xh7 13
♖g5+ ♖g6 (13 ... ♖g8 14 ♗h5 ♖e5
15 cd! ♖g6 16 ♗h7+ ♖f8 17 h4! ±
ECO) 14 h4 ♖h8? (14 ... f5! might
have refuted the attack — Vukovic,
The Art of Attack in Chess.) 15
♖xe6+! ♖f6 (15 ... fe 16 ♗d3+) 16
h5+ ♗h6 17 ♖xd6 ♗a5 18 ♖xf7+
♗h7 19 ♖g5+! ♖g8 20 ♗b3+ 1-0.

c) 8 ... e5 is too hasty. After 9 e4
cd 10 cd de 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♖xe4
ed 13 ♗xd4 White has the freer
game; Colle-Thomas, Carlsbad 1929.
d) 8 ... b6 is too slow, e.g. 9 e4 de
10 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖b8 12
♗c2 f5 13 ♖d3 ♖e8 14 ♖c4
with pressure; Reilly-Tumurbator,
Moscow 1956.

9 e4

Goglidze-Sozin, 7th USSR Ch

1931, went 9 ♗e2 ♖e8 10 h3?! e5 11 de ♖xe5 12 ♖xe5 ♗xe5 13 ♖f3 ♗d6 14 ♗c2 ♗d7 15 c4 dc 16 ♗xc4 b5 ♞.

9 ... cd
10 cd de
11 ♖xe4 ♗d5!

a) 11 ... ♖xe4? 12 ♖xe4 ♖e8 13 ♖h4 ♖f8 14 ♖g5 h6 15 ♗h5! e5 16 ♗d2 ed 17 ♖c1 ♗e7 18 ♖e4 ♖g6 19 ♗g5! ♗e5 20 f4 ♗d5? (20 ... ♗a5 21 b4 ±) 21 ♖f6+! Landau-Book, Kemerli 1937.

b) 11 ... b6 12 ♗g5 (Przepiorka-Prokes, Budapest 1925) 12 ... ♗f4! ± – Pirc.

c) 11 ... ♗f4 and now:

c1) 12 g3 ♗xc1 13 ♖xc1 ♗a5 – Neikirch and Tsvetkov.

c2) 12 ♖xf6+!? ♖xf6 13 ♖e5 ♗xc1 14 ♖xc1 followed by g4 ± – ECO.

c3) 12 ♗e3! ♗d5 13 ♖c1 ♗b6 14 ♗d2 ♗xe3 15 fe ♗f6 16 ♖c5 ♖xc5 17 ♖xc5 ♗d7 18 ♗f2 ♗d5 19 ♗h4 f5 20 e4? (weakens the d-pawn) 20 ... ♖b4 21 ♗c4 ♖c2 22 ♖c1 ♖e3! 23 ♗b3 ♖f6 (Crepeaux-Prokes, The Hague 1928) and now 24 ♗f4 was necessary.

12 ♖xd6

ECO suggests 12 ♗d2!? followed by ♖c1 ±.

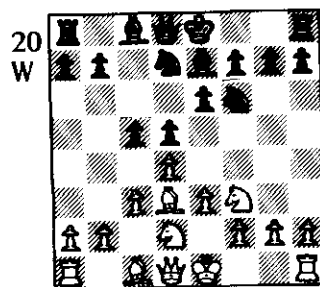
12 ... ♗xd6

White has two bishops but Black has a very solid blockade of the d-pawn. Koltanowski-Feigin, Hastings 1936-7, continued 13 ♖e5 (13 ♖g5 ♖f7f6 14 ♗f3 ♗b4 ∞, Dushotimirski) 13 ... b6 14 a3 ♗b7 15 ♗b2 a5 16 ♗f3 ♗a6 17 ♖c4 ♗xc4 18 ♗xc4 ♖f7f6 ♞.

B2

5 ... ♖bd7
6 ♖bd2 ♗e7(20)

A comparatively infrequent defence, albeit the one recommended as safest by both Euwe and Pachman.



7 0-0

7 ♗e2 0-0 need not transpose if instead of 8 0-0 White plays:

a) 8 e4 (or 8 dc ♖xc5) 8 ... de 9 ♖xe4 cd 10 ♖xd4 (or 10 cd ♗b4+) 10 ... ♗b4+ with a free game for Black.

b) 8 ♖e5!? ♖xe5 (8 ... ♗c7 9 f4) 9 de ♖d7 10 f4 f5 (10 ... f6 11 e4 fe 12 ed rather than 11 ♗h5 f5 12 g4!? – Tartakower and Du Mont) 11 b3 ♖b8! 12 ♗b2 ♖c6 13 0-0 ♗d7 14 ♗h1 ♗h8 15 g4 g6 16 ♖g1 ♖g8 17 ♖g3 ♗f8 18 ♖ag1 ♗f7 19 ♖f3 (no better 19 gf gf or 19 g5 ♗g7) 19 ... ♖ad8 20 h4 a6 21 c4? (better 21 ♖h3) 21 ... dc 22 dc ♖b4 23 ♗b1 ♗c6 24 a3 (24 g5 relatively best) 24 ... ♖d3! (25 ♗xd3? fg) and Black took the initiative; Landau-Berger, match 1932.

7 ... 0-0

Or 7 ... ♗c7 when:

a) 8 ♗e2 a6!? 9 b3!? (9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 b5 11 ♗g5 ♗b7 12 ♖fe1 ± – ECO) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♗b2 b5 11 c4 bc 12 bc cd 13 ♖xd4 dc 14 ♖xc4 ♖c5 15 ♗c2 ♗b7 16 f3 ♖ac8 17 ♖ac1 ♗d5 = Stoltz-Lilienthal, Saltsjöbaden 1948.

b) 8 e4 de 9 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 10 ♗xe4 ♖f6 11 ♗c2 0-0 12 ♗g5 ♖d8 = Gottliff-Rozental, Tourney of Leningrad Masters 1934.

8 ♖e5!?

Alternatively:

a) 8 ♗e2 and now:

a1) 8 ... b6 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 ♗b7 11 ♖d1 ♗c7 12 ♗g5 ♖fe8 13 dc ♖xe4 14 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 15 ♗xe4 ♖xc5 16 ♗c4 ♗xg5 17 ♖xg5 ♗e7 18 ♖f3 = Kashdan-H.Steiner, Pasadena 1932.

a2) 8 ... ♗c7 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 ♖xe4?! (10 ... b6!? ± ECO) 11 ♗xe4 g6 12 ♗h6 ♖e8 13 ♖e5 ♖xe5 14 de ♗d7 15 ♖fe1 ♖ed8 16 ♖e3! ± Havasi-Gemzoe, Hamburg 1930.

b) 8 ♖e1 when:

b1) 8 ... ♗c7 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖f6 12 ♗c2 b6 13 ♗g5 ♗b7 14 ♗d3 g6 15 ♖e5 ♖ac8 16 dc ♖fd8 17 ♗h3 ± Colle-Rubinstein, San Remo 1930.

b2) 8 ... b6 9 e4 de 10 ♖xe4 ♗b7 11 ♖f4?! (11 ♗e2 = ECO) 11 ... cd 12 cd ♖xe4 13 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 14 ♖xe4 ♖f6 15 ♖e1 ♗d5 ♞ Voellmy-Staehlin, Berne 1932.

c) 8 e4 de (not 8 ... cd? 9 e5) 9 ♖xe4 when:

c1) 9 ... cd?! 10 cd (10 ♖xd4 ♖xe4 = Larrain-Lundin, Leipzig 1960) 10 ... ♖xe4 11 ♖xe4 ♖f6 12 ♗d3! (better than 12 ♗c2 b6 of Konstantinopolsky vs Tolush, 16th USSR Ch 1948) 12 ... b6 13 ♖e5 ♗b7 14 ♖e1 ♗c7 15 ♖f4 with some initiative as compensation for the isolated d-pawn; Koltanowski-Lau, Zurich 1936.

c2) 9 ... ♖xe4! (9 ... b6!? – Zeitsa) 10 ♖xe4 ♖f6 11 ♗c2 b6 = – Euwe. d) 8 b3 (8 dc ♖xc5 ♞ ECO) 8 ... b6 9 ♗b2 ♗b7 10 ♗e2 ♖e4 11 ♖fd1 f5 12 c4 ♗a6 = Eliskases-Engels, Bad Oeynhausen 1938.

8 ... ♖xe5
9 de ♗d7
10 f4 f5
11 ef

Here Black has continued:

a) 11 ... ♖xf6 12 e4 ♖f8 13 ♖f3 ♖g6 14 e5 ♖f8 15 ♗c2 ♗e8 16 c4 d4 17 h4 with pressure (1-0, 32) Breyer-Maroczy, Berlin 1920.

b) 11 ... ♖f6 12 e4 c4 13 ♗c2 (better 13 ♗e2 – Aitken) 13 ... e5! 14 ed (14 fe ♖g4) 14 ... ♖g4 15 ♖e4 ♖f5 (Anderson-Nairn, Scottish Ch 1955) 16 d6 = – Aitken.

Summary

The less-explored lines in which Black plays ... ♖bd7 offer Black better chances of equalizing than the ... ♖c6 plans. White still has several new ideas to test, however.

4 Colle v. Queen's Indian (...b6)

In this chapter we look at those lines of the Colle System in which Black defers or entirely renounces ... d5, preferring a ♗-side fianchetto. In most of these variations White could transpose to the Queen's Indian by playing c4.

1 d4 ♖f6
2 ♖f3 e6

2 ... b6 can have an independent significance. For 3 ♖f4!? ♖b7 4 ♖bd2 c5 5 e3 e6 (Tarrasch-Reti, Semmering 1926) compare chapter 5.

Some lines peculiar to 2 ... b6 3 e3 ♖b7 4 ♖bd2 are:

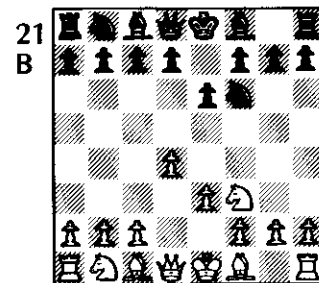
a) 4 ... c5 5 c3 g6 6 ♖d3 ♖g7 7 e4 d6 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♗e2 cd 10 cd ♖c6 11 a3 ♖d7 12 ♖b3 a5 = Koltanowski-Alekhine, Hastings 1936-7.

b) 4 ... g6 5 ♖bd2 d5 (5 ... c5!?) 6 ♖e5 ♖g7 7 f4 0-0 8 ♗f3 ♖fd7 9 ♖g4 f5 10 ♖e5 c5 11 c3 ♖xe5 12 fe ♖a6 = Popov-Sliwa, Tsopot 1951.

c) 4 ... d6 5 b3 ♖bd7 6 ♖b2 g6 7 ♖d3 ♖g7 8 ♗e2 0-0 9 h4!? (9 e4 e5 10 de ♖g4 =) 9 ... ♖e8 (Neikirkh and Tsvetkov prefer 9 ... c5) 10 0-0-0 e5 11 de de 12 ♖c4 h6 13 ♖f1 ♗e7 14 ♖g3 e4 15 ♖d4 ♖e5 =

Popov-Arlamovsky, Tsopot 1951.

3 e3(27)



Black now has:

A 3 ... b6

B 3 ... c5 4 ♖bd2 b6

A

3 ... b6
4 ♖bd2

4 ♖d3, though often played, is possibly less precise in view of 4 ... ♖a6!?

4 ... ♖b7

Against 4 ... c5, Koltanowski suggested 5 ♖b5!? but 5 c3 and 5 ♖bd2 (see below) and line B are more usual replies.

5 ♖d3 c5

For 5 ... d5 see chapter 2, C1.

Also possible:

a) 5 ... ♖e7 6 0-0 0-0 (6 ... d5 chapter 9) 7 b3 d6 8 ♖b2 ♖bd7 9 ♗e2 c5 10 c4 ♗c7 11 ♖ad1 ♖ad8 12 ♖b1 ♖fe8 13 ♖g5 ± Popov-Baltsarek, Tsopot 1951.

b) 5 ... d6 6 b3 ♖bd7 7 ♖b2 ♖e7 8 0-0 c5 9 ♗e2 0-0 10 ♖ad1 ♗c7 11 c4 ♖fe8 (11 ... ♖ad8 see a) 12 e4 e5 13 d5 g6 14 ♗h1 ♖h5 15 g3 ♖f8 16 ♖e1 ♖df6 17 f4 ♖ae8 18 ♖g2 ♖c8 19 f5 ♖g7 20 g4 g5 21 h4 h6 22 hg hg 23 ♖e3 ♖d8 24 ♗h2 ♖fe8 25 ♗g2 ♖b7 26 ♖f3 b5 27 ♖h1 ±± Riumin-Sozin, 7th USSR Ch 1931.

6 0-0

The immediate 6 c3 is also possible, but not necessary. Then:

a) 6 ... ♖c6 7 a3 (7 e4 cd 8 cd ♖b4 9 ♖c2 ♖a6) 7 ... ♗c7 8 e4 cd (8 ... e5 9 d5) 9 cd ♖e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 b4 ♖ac8 12 ♖b2 d6 13 ♖c1 ♗b8 better 13 ... ♗d8) 14 ♗e2 ♖fe8 15 ♖b3 ♖f8? (15 ... h6 essential) 16 e5 ♖d5 17 ♖xh7+! (1-0, 29) Koltanowski-Reilly, Barcelona 1935.

b) 6 ... ♖e7 when:

b1) 7 ♗e2 ♖d5! 8 dc (8 e4 ♖f4 or 8 c4 ♖b4) 8 ... bc 9 ♖f1 ♗c7 10 ♖g3 ♖c6 11 ♖d2 g5! and Black has a fine game; Ahues-Alekhine, San Remo 1930.

b2) 7 e4 (7 0-0 below) 7 ... d6 8 ♗e2 cd 9 ♖xd4 = Schenk-Spielmann, Ebensee 1933.

c) 6 ... cd 7 ed (7 cd ♖c6 8 0-0 ♖b4 =) 7 ... ♖c6 8 0-0 ♖e7 (8 ... ♗c7 9 ♖e1 h5?! 10 ♖c4 ♖g4 11 ♖g5! ±) 9 ♗e2 when:

c1) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♖e4?! ♖xe4 11 ♗xe4 f5 12 ♗e2 ♖d6 13 ♖g5 ♖xd4! 14

♖xd4 ♗xg5 15 f3 ♖f6 16 ♖b5 ♖h6 17 f4 ♖xf4 0-1 (18 g3 ♖xg3! 19 hg ♗xg3+ 20 ♗g2 ♗h4 and ... ♖g6) Mouracheff-Soultanbeieff, Liege Ch 1930.

c2) 9 ... ♗c7 10 ♖e5 0-0 11 f4 d6 12 ♖g4 ♖b8 13 f5 e5 14 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 15 ♖e4 ♖d7 ± Popov-Koch, Sopot 1951.

6 ... ♖c6

Others:

a) 6 ... ♖e7 7 c3 (7 b3 see B) 7 ... 0-0 (maybe premature) 8 e4 and now:

a1) 8 ... cd 9 ♖xd4?! d6 10 ♗e2 ♖bd7 11 f4 ♖c5 12 ♖c2 ♖a6 13 c4 ♖c8 14 b4 e5 15 bc ed 16 cd ♗xd6 17 ♖d3 ♖d7 ½:½ Colle-Mattison, Budapest 1926.

a2) 8 ... ♖c6 see below.

b) 6 ... d6 7 ♗e2 ♖bd7 8 c3 ♖e7 9 e4 cd 10 cd a6 11 b3 0-0 12 ♖b2 g6 13 ♖fd1 ♗b8 14 h3 ♖d8 15 ♖f1 ♖h5 16 ♗e3 e5 17 de de 18 ♖c4 b5 19 ♖xd7! ♖xd7 20 ♖xe5 bc 21 ♖xd7 ♗c7 22 ♖b6 ♖d8 23 ♖xc4 ♖c5 24 ♗f3 ± Denker-Ervin, Lone Pine 1976.

c) 6 ... cd? 7 ed d5?! 8 ♖e5 ♖c6 9 ♖df3 ♗c7 10 ♖g5 ♖xe5 11 de ♖d7 (11 ... ♗xe5 12 ♖b5+) 12 ♗h5 g6 13 ♗f3 ♖xe5 14 ♗f6 ♖g+ 15 ♖b5+ ♖c6 16 ♖xc6+ ♗xc6 17 ♗xf7+ ♖d8 18 ♖xe6+ ♖c8 19 ♖xf8 ♗d6 20 ♗e6+ ♖c7 21 ♗xg4 ♖axf8 22 ♗g3 1-0 Denker-Chernev, USA Ch 1942.

7 c3

For 7 b3 see B. 7 c4, transposing to the Queen's Indian, is still possible.

7 ... ♖e7(22)

Alternatively:

a) 7 ... cd 8 ed see note c to White's 6th move.

b) 7 ... ♗c7 does not always transpose:

b1) 8 ♖e1 ♖c8 9 a3 ♖e7 see below.

b2) 8 e4!? and if 8 ... cd 9 ♖xd4 (but not 9 cd ♖b4 10 ♖b1 ♖c8) was suggested by Kan.

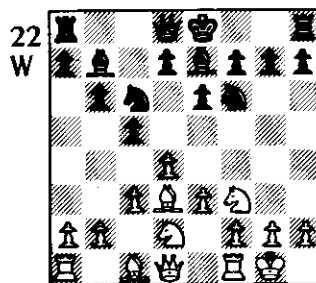
b3) 8 a3 ♖e7 9 e4 d6 10 ♖e1 h6 11 ♖f1 0-0-0?! (better 11 ... g5 ♖ ... g4; if 12 e5 de 13 de ♖d5 ♖ ... 0-0-0 = Kan) 12 d5 ed 13 ed ♖e5 14 ♖xe5 de 15 c4 ♖d6 16 ♖d2 ♖de8 17 ♖c3 h5 and Black stands no worse; Lilienthal-Kan, Moscow 1936.

b4) 8 ♗e2 ♖e7 9 e4 and now:

b41) 9 ... cd 10 ♖xd4 ♖e5 11 ♖c2 ♗c8 12 h3 ♖c6 13 ♖df3 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 d6 and Black had a very solid position, Spielmann-Eliskases, 9th match game 1936.

b42) 9 ... d6 10 e5 de 11 de ♖d5 12 ♖c4 h6 13 a4 g5 14 h3? 0-0-0 15 a5 ♖dg8 16 ab ab 17 ♖a3 g4 18 hg ♖xg4 19 ♖h2? (better 19 ♖a6) 19 ... ♖xg2+! 20 ♖xg2 ♖d4! 21 ♗e4 (21 cd ♖f4+ 22 ♖g3 ♖xe2+ 23 ♖xe2 ♖g8+ 24 ♖f4 ♖g5+ ♣♣) 21 ... f5 22 ♖b5 ♗d8 23 cd fe 24 ♖xe4 ♖f4+ 25 ♖xf4 ♖xe4+ 26 f3 ♖b7 27 ♖a7 ♗d7 28 ♖fa1 ♗xb5 29 ♖a8+ ♗c7 30 ♖xh8 ♗xb2+ 0-1 Iglitsky-Kan, Moscow 1928.

This is the critical position of the Colle v. Queen's Indian. Black has avoided premature castling, which might allow White to build up a strong attack. Instead he posts his



pieces ready to deal with the advance e3-e4, (without which White's build-up would be senseless.

8 ♗e2

White has also tried:

a) 8 dc bc! 9 e4 ♗c7 10 ♗e2 d6 11 ♖c4 0-0 12 e5 de 13 ♖xc5 ♖xe5 = Colle-Pirc, Frankfurt 1930.

b) 8 ♖e5 d6 9 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 10 ♗e2 e5 11 e4 0-0 12 d5 ♖d7 13 c4 ♗c8 14 f3 ♖h5 15 g3 g6 16 ♖f2 f5 17 ♖f1 f4 18 g4 ♖xg4! 19 fg f3 20 ♖xf3 ♗xg4+ 21 ♖g3 ♖xf1+! 22 ♖xf1 ♖xg3+ 23 hg ♗xg3 ♣ Aliaga-Alekhine, Paris 1914; comparison with Riumin-Sozin (above) reveals that Black's queen's bishop was better placed here, but also that White played unduly passively after the centre was blocked.

c) 8 e4 and now:

c1) 8 ... ♖c6 9 a3 (9 ♗e2 below) 9 ... cd 10 cd ♗c7 11 b4 ♖ac8 12 ♖b2 ♖fd8 13 ♖c1 ♗b8 14 ♗e2 with a good game for White; Koltanowski-Anderson, Columbus 1957.

c2) 8 ... cd! 9 ♖xd4 (9 cd ♖b4 10 ♖b1 ♖a6) and now:

c21) 9 ... ♖e5!? 10 ♖c2 ♖a6 11 ♖e1 ♗c7 (Euwe suggested 11 ... ♖d3 12 ♖e3 ♖xc1 and 13 ... ♗c7.) 12 ♖2f3 ♖g6 ± Colle-L.Steiner, Niendorf 1927.

c22) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♗e2 (better 10 ♖xc6 first) 10 ... ♖e5 11 ♖c2 ♗c8! 12 f4 ♖a6 13 ♗d1 ♖c6 (not 13 ... ♖xf1? 14 fe with two pieces for the rook) and White's control of the centre will be undermined. Colle-Capablanca, Carlsbad 1929, continued 14 ♖f3?! (14 e5 ♖d5 and not 15 ♖xh7+? ♗xh7 16 ♗h5+ ♖g8 17 ♖f3 because of 17 ... f5 18 ♖h3 ♖xf4.) 14 ... g6! 15 ♖2b3 ♖xd4 16 ♖xd4 ♖b7 17 ♗e2 ♖c5 18 ♖h3 ♗c6! 19 e5 ♖d5 20 ♗f2?! (Vukovic suggested 20 ♖e3 ♖xd4 21 cd ♖ac8 22 ♖b3! =.) 20 ... ♖xd4?! (20 ... f5 ♣ is sounder — Vukovic.) 21 cd ♖ac8 22 ♖d1! f6! 23 ♗h4? (Vukovic pointed out that 23 ♖d2! might even favour White.) 23 ... ♖f7 24 ♖f3 ♗c4 (♣♣) 25 ♖e3 ♖xe3 26 ♖xb7 ♖f5! 27 ♗e1 ♖c7 28 ♖e4 ♗d4+ 29 ♗h1 fe 30 ♖xf5 ef 31 fe ♖e7 32 ♖e3 ♗xb2 33 e6 de 34 ♖xe6 ♗f7! 0-1.

d) 8 ♖e1 ♖c8 9 a3 and now:

d1) 9 ... ♗c7 10 e4 cd 11 cd d6 12 b4 e5 13 ♖b2 ed 14 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 15 ♖xd4 0-0 16 ♖e3 ♖fd8 17 ♖h3 g6 18 ♗f3 ♖h5 19 g4 ♖g7 20 ♗e3 g5 21 ♖b2! f6 22 e5 de 23 ♖xh7+ ♗f7 24 ♖e4 ♗d7 25 ♗f3! (1-0, 37) Soultanbeieff-Kramer, Beverwijk 1950.

d2) 9 ... d5 (9 ... cd!? — Pritchett) 10 e4 (10 dc!? bc 11 e4 ♗c7 or 11 ... d4!?) 10 ... de 11 ♖xe4 cd 12 cd

0-0 and now 13 ♖c3! is relatively best (½:½, 26 in Harding-Pritchett, Dublin 1976) but White is about two tempi down on normal isolated d-pawn lines (e.g. from the Nimzo-Indian) so, if anything, stands at a disadvantage here. Possibly the immediate 8 a3, or 9 e4 (instead of 9 a3) could be tried.

8 ... 0-0

However Black could play 8 ... d5 as in d) above. Neikirkh and Tsvetkov then suggest that White should adopt a Stonewall set-up by 9 ♖e5 ♗c7 10 f4 (like Bird's Opening or a reversed Dutch). Also possible is 8 ... d6 and if 9 e4 ♗c7 transposing to Iglitsky-Kan above.

9 a3

9 dc might be a little better. 9 ♖e1 is superfluous, e.g. 9 ... ♗c7 10 e4 cd 11 ♖xd4 ♖e5 12 ♖c2 ♖g6 13 ♖f1 ♖ac8 14 ♖g5 ♖d5 15 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 16 ♖e3 d5 17 ed ♖f4! 18 ♗f3 ♖xd5 19 ♖xd5 (19 ♖e4 ♖xe3 20 ♖xb7 ♖xg2 21 ♖ed1 ♖h4! etc.) 19 ... ♖xd5 20 ♖e4 ♖c4 and Black has some initiative (but ½:½, 40) Maroczy-Colle, San Remo 1930.

9 ... ♖c8

9 ... d5!? might still be best (possibly with 8 ... ♖c8 instead of 8 ... 0-0).

10 e4 cd
11 cd d6
12 b4 ±

With the same plan as in Koltanowski-Reilly in note a) to White's 6th move above. The game Koltanowski-Flohr, Antwerp 1932, went on 12 ... ♖h5 13 g3 g6 14

♠b2 d5 15 e5 ♗g7 16 ♖b3 a5?! 17 b5 ♖b8 18 ♜fc1 ♗d7 19 ♜xc8 ♗xc8 20 ♜c1 ♗b8 21 ♗c2 ♗e8 22 ♗d2 (Black is tied up.) 22 ... ♗g7 23 ♜c2 h6 24 ♜c1 ♜h8 25 h4 ♗f8 26 ♗f4 ♗d8 27 ♜c3 ♜c8 28 ♗a1 ♗d7 29 ♗c2 a4 30 ♖b4 ♜xb4 31 ab ♗g8 32 ♗d2 ♗c7 33 ♗e2 ♗e8 34 ♗h2 ♗d7 35 ♗g4 ♗h7 36 ♜xh6 ♗e7 37 ♗c2 1-0.

B

3 ... c5

4 ♖bd2

4 ♗d3 usually transposes – but see the note to White's 5th and Enevoldsen-Nimzowitsch, p. 6. Also 4 b3 has been played, and should also transpose into one of the lines below.

4 ... b6

4 ... d5 see chapter 3.

If 4 ... ♗c6, 5 ♗e2 (Watson-Rubinstein, London 1922) is too defensive. 5 ♗d3 can be played because 5 ... ♖b4 6 ♗e2 b6 7 c3 ♗c6 8 ♗d3 comes to the same thing as A above; 5 c3 is also possible.

5 ♗d3

If White wants to avoid the line ... ♗a6 (note to Black's 5th) he must play 5 c3 here and transpose to A.

5 ... ♗b7

Stahlberg-Kottbauer, Budapest 1952, however went 5 ... ♗a6!? 6 ♜xa6 ♗xa6 7 c3 ♗e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♗e2 ♗c8 10 a3 (not 10 e4 cd 11 cd ♖b4) 10 ... ♗b7 11 ♗d1 ♜ac8 12 ♗f1 ♖b8 13 ♗g3 ♗e4 14 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 15 a4! but now Black lost the initiative by the pointless move 15

... ♗b7? and White won after further errors.

6 0-0

6 b3 can be played first but usually transposes. However, after 6 ... ♗c6 7 ♗b2 these examples are also available:

a) 7 ... cd 8 ed ♖b4 9 ♗f1! (but not 9 ♗e2 ♖bd5 and ... ♗f4) Rubinstein-Capablanca, Carlsbad 1929, continuing 9 ... ♜c8 10 c4 ♗c6 11 ♗d3 d5 12 0-0 ♗d6 13 a3 0-0 14 ♗e1 dc 15 bc ♗f4 16 ♗f1! ♗a5 17 ♗e2 ♗c7 (17 ... ♗h6 18 ♗e5!) 18 d5! ♗xc4! 19 ♗xf6 gf 20 de fe! 21 ♗d4! ♗d5! 22 ♗xe6 ♗xe6 23 ♗xe6+ ♗h8 24 ♗e4! ♗e5! 25 ♗a6! ♜ce8 26 ♗f5 ♗h6 27 ♗ae1 ♗d8! 28 ♗h4 ♗g7 29 ♗h3 ♗d4! 30 ♗h5 ♗g4 31 ♗g3 ♗f4 32 ♗d1 ♗xg3 33 ♗xg3 ♗xg3 34 hg ♗e7 35 ♗f5! ½:½.

b) 7 ... ♗e7 8 dc!? (possibly 8 c4 is best?) 8 ... bc 9 0-0 0-0 10 c4 ♗c7 11 h3 ♗e8 12 a3 f5 13 ♗c2 ♗f6 ♢ Rubinstein-Geiger, Rogaska Slatina 1929.

6 c3 can also be played. Nenarokov-Grigoriev, Moscow Ch 1924, continued 6 ... ♗c6 7 0-0 (7 e4 cd 8 cd ♖b4 9 ♗c2 ♗a6) 7 ... ♗e7 8 dc bc! (8 ... ♗xc5 9 e4 d5 10 e5 ♗g4 11 ♗b5 ±) 9 e4 ♗c7 10 ♗e1 d5! 11 ed (11 e5 ♗g4 12 ♗e2 c4 13 ♗c2 ♗c5) 11 ... ed 12 ♗f1 0-0 13 ♗g3 ♗d6 14 ♗g5 ♗d7 15 ♗f5 ♗f4 and now 16 ♗a4!? ∞ – Rabinovich.

6 ... ♗e7

7 b3 cd

Alternatively:

a) 7 ... ♗c6 8 a3 (or 8 ♗b2 d5 9 a3

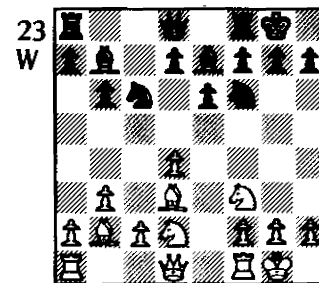
0-0 10 ♗e2 ♗c7 11 ♗e5 ♗d7 = N and T) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♗b2 d6 10 c4 ♜c8 11 ♜c1 ♗c7 12 ♗c2 h6 13 ♜fd1 ♗b8 14 ♗b1 cd 15 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 16 ♗xd4 d5 17 ♗b2 ♗g4! Averbakh-Chekhover, Ch of VTsPS 1946.

b) 7 ... 0-0 8 ♗b2 d6 9 ♗e2 a6 10 ♗ad1 ♖bd7 11 c4 ♗c7 12 ♗b1 ♜fd8 13 e4 cd 14 ♗xd4 ♗f8 15 ♗ac1 ♗ac8 16 b4 ♗b8 17 f4 e5! = (0-1, 44) Janowski-Spielmann, Marienbad 1925.

8 ed 0-0

8 ... d6 is dubious because of 9 ♗b2 ♖bd7 10 c4 0-0 11 ♜c1 ♗e8 12 ♗e1 (Colle-Grünfeld, Berlin 1926) with a favourable form of Queen's Indian. White has a space advantage without being committed to any rigid formation.

9 ♗b2 ♗c6(23)



This position also tends to turn into a kind of Queen's Indian as White is bound to play c2-c4 sooner or later, as the following examples show:

a) Soultanbeieff-Dunkelblum, Spa

1926: 10 c4 d5 11 a3 ♗c7 12 ♗c2 dc 13 bc h6 (better 13 ... ♜fd8) 14 ♗ad1 (14 d5 ♗d8!) 14 ... ♜fd8 15 ♜fe1 ♗ac8 16 h3 ♗e8 17 ♖b3 ♗f8? (17 ... ♗f6 or 17 ... a5 – Soultanbeieff) 18 ♗e2 a5 19 d5! ed 20 cd ♖b8 (20 ... ♜xd5 21 ♗e4!) 21 ♗e4?! (simpler 21 ♗f5) 21 ... ♗f6 22 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 23 ♗h7 g6 24 ♗h4!? ♗g7? (24 ... ♗xd5 25 ♗xg6! ♗xb3 26 ♗f5! draws.) 25 ♗g6! ♗d5 26 ♜xd5 ♗xd5 27 ♗f5! fg 28 ♗e7 gf? (28 ... ♗e7 29 ♗e7 ♗d8 30 ♗g6+ ♗f7 31 ♗d4 ♗d6 32 ♗e5+) 29 ♗xg7 mate.

b) Platonov-Karpov, 39th USSR Ch 1971: 10 a3 ♗c7 11 ♗e1 ♗ac8 12 c4 d5 13 ♜c1 ♜fd8 14 ♗e2 dc 15 bc ♗f4! 16 g3 ♗h6 17 ♗c2 ♗h5 18 ♗f1 ♜c7 19 ♗e2 ♗f5 20 ♗d3 ♗h5 21 ♗e2 ½:½; however, White did not make the most of his chances in this game. He was probably happy to draw with Karpov.

Summary

Black can get good chances against the Colle system by fianchettoing his queen's bishop, delaying both castling and ... d5. White usually finds it necessary to play a2-a3 to avoid dangers of ... cd, ... ♖b4 and play on the c-file. His best plan may well be to play b3 rather than c3 and transpose into the Keres system against the Queen's Indian (in which White's knight is at least as well placed on d2 as on c3).

5 London System (♟f4), Introduction

The London System resembles the Colle, but with one important difference. White develops his queen's bishop more actively, on f4. There it is outside the c3-d4-e3 pawn wedge and bears down on the black ♗-side. The drawback is that its absence from White's own ♗-side may encourage Black to find counterplay on that wing, e.g. by ... ♗b6 attacking the now unprotected pawn at b2 — as indeed happens in some lines of the Torre Attack.

White most often adopts the London System against the King's Indian (see chapter 6) as in the original game Watson-Euwe, London 1922 and others from that same tournament. However, White can also play an early ♟f4 against other black formations — as in Watson-Capablanca from round 12 of the London tournament, although this was not a new idea even then.

More recently, the London System has been a speciality of some Scottish players — such as Bonner, Fairhurst, Fallon and

McAlpine — and of the Yugoslavian masters Gasic and Rakic. Against the King's Indian (1 ... ♟f6 2 ♟f3 g6) the English master M.J. Franklin has refined many of the ideas in two decades of experience with the system — as we shall see in chapter 6.

Where Black does not play ... g6, two move-orders need to be distinguished:

A 1 d4 d5 (to London)

B 1 d4 ♟f6 (to London)

of which the former is much the more important. It is true that both of the main move-orders 1 d4 d5 2 ♟f3 ♟f6 3 ♟f4 and 1 d4 ♟f6 2 ♟f3 e6 3 ♟f4 do involve some weakening of the h2-b8 diagonal which White hopes to exploit, but where Black is not committed to ... d5 he has more flexible counters at his disposal. The slight rigidity in White's position is more likely to be disadvantageous when Black himself does not have a rigid stance.

A

1 d4 d5

2 ♟f3

'Knights before bishops' — or

rather knight before bishop — in the approved fashion. Nevertheless 2 ♟f4 is playable, and sometimes can be independently significant:

a) 2 ... c5!? 3 e3 (3 ♟f3 below) 3 ... ♟c6 4 c3 e6 (For 4 ... ♗b6 see von Scheve-Marshall, Chapter 1, p. 5) 5 ♟d2 ♟d6 6 ♟g3 ♟f6 7 f4 cd (7 ... ♗c7 = ECO) 8 ed ♗c7 9 ♗f3 ♟d7 10 ♟d3 ♟a5 11 ♟h3 ♟c4 12 ♟xc4 dc 13 ♗e2 b5 14 a4 ± Janowski-Marshall, match 1916.

b) 2 ... ♟f6 3 e3 when:

b1) 3 ... ♟g4 4 ♟e2 (4 f3 ♟f5) 4 ... ♟xe2 5 ♗xe2 c6 6 ♟d2 e6 7 c3 ♟bd7 8 e4 (8 ♟gf3, intending ♟e5, is also possible.) 8 ... ♟xe4 9 ♟xe4 de 10 ♗xe4 ± Alapin-Rubinstein, Carlsbad 1911.

b2) 3 ... c5 4 c3 ♗b6 5 ♟f3 below.

b3) 3 ... e6 and now:

b31) 4 ♟d2 c5 5 c3 ♟d6 6 ♟xd6 ♗xd6 7 f4 0-0 8 ♟d3 b6 9 ♗e2 cd 10 cd d5 11 ♟gf3 ♟a6 12 0-0 ♟xd3 13 ♗xd3 ½:½ Kovacevic-Ciric, Yugoslav Ch 1967.

b32) 4 ♟d3 c5 5 c3 ♗b6 6 ♗c2 and:

b321) 6 ... ♟bd7 7 ♟d2 ♟d6 8 ♟xd6 (8 ♟gf3!?) 8 ... ♗xd6 9 f4 ♟g4?! (ECO suggests 9 ... b6.) 10 ♟f1 cd 11 cd ♗b4+ 12 ♗e2! ± (½:½, 71) Janowski-Ed.Lasker, New York 1924.

b322) 6 ... ♟c6 7 ♟f3 ♟d7 8 0-0 ♟c8 9 dc! ♟xc5 10 ♟bd2 ♟e7 11 a3 threatening e4 ± — Alekhine.

After 2 ♟f3 White can meet three distinct systems:

A1 2 ... e6 3 ♟f4

A2 2 ... c5 3 ♟f4

A3 2 ... ♟f6 3 ♟f4

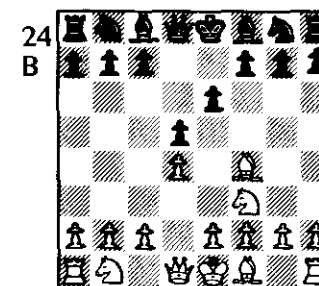
Black has also tried 2 ... c6 3 ♟f4 ♟f5 (3 ... ♗b6!? see Rakic-Bagirov, Chapter 1, p. 2) 4 e3 e6 5 ♟d3 ♟f6 6 ♟xf5 (better 6 0-0 ♟e7 7 ♟bd2 — Kotov) 6 ... ef 7 ♗d3 ♟e4 and Black has stolen his opponent's thunder by obtaining the e-file himself; Nestler-Smyslov, Venice 1950.

A1

2 ... e6
3 ♟f4(24)

For other moves, see chapter 7.

Alekhine's general comment on 3 ♟f4 was 'This interesting and not easily handled variation leads to complicated play in the centre with the chances rather favourable to White, chiefly on account of the strength of his black squares.' The exchange of White's dark-squared bishop (essentially a bad bishop) for his 'good' opposite number — especially on f4 — enhances this advantage. By making a nuisance of the bishop, White increases the chances that his opponent will decide to exchange it.



3 ... ♟d6

Or 3 ... c5 (a natural reaction) 4

c3 ♖b6 5 ♖b3 and now:

a) 5 ... c4?! 6 ♖xb6 ab 7 ♖bd2 ♖c6 8 a3!? (to freeze the ♖-side) 8 ... ♖f6 9 h3 ♖e7 10 g4 0-0 11 ♖g2 ♖e8 12 0-0 ♖d6 13 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 14 ♖e1?! (14 ♖ae1! f5 15 ef ± — Pribyl) 14 ... f5! ± (1-0, 41) Pribyl-Urzița, Bucharest 1975.

b) 5 ... ♖xb3 6 ab cd 7 cd ± — Pribyl. White's pressure on the a-file is good compensation for the doubled b-pawns.

c) 5 ... ♖f6 6 e3 see below (Janowski-Tarrasch).

4 e3

White has also tried:

a) 4 ♖g3!? ♖f6 5 e3 ♖xg3 6 hg c5 7 dc ♖a5+ 8 ♖bd2 ♖c6 9 c3 ♖xc5 10 ♖d3 ♖g4! 11 ♖g5!? (11 ♖xh7? ♖xh7 12 ♖xh7 g6) 11 ... ♖ce5 12 ♖df3 ♖d7 13 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 14 ♖e2 f6 15 ♖f3 ♖c6 16 ♖c2 g6 17 0-0-0 (17 ♖xg6+!? ∞) 17 ... 0-0-0 Marco and Fahndrich-Charousek and Halprin, Vienna 1897.

b) 4 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 5 ♖bd2 ♖f6 6 c3 ♖bd7 7 ♖c2 e5 8 e3 0-0 9 de ♖xe5 10 ♖e2 (10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 11 ♖f3 = Reti) 10 ... ♖g4 11 h3 ♖h5 12 ♖xe5 ♖xe2! 13 ♖ef3 ♖a6 14 ♖b3 ♖d3 15 ♖d1 b6 16 ♖c1 ♖c4! 17 ♖e5 (17 b3 ♖a5) 17 ... ♖ad8 ♠ Blackburne-Charousek, Berlin 1897.

4 ... ♖xf4

Or: 5 ... ♖c6 6 ♖d3 (6 ♖bd2 ♖d6 see A2) 6 ... ♖b6! 7 ♖c1 (7 ♖c2 ♖d7 ♠ ... ♖c8, ... cd, ... ♖b4; 7 ♖b3? c4 8 ♖xb6 ab ♠ ... b5-b4 ♠) 7 ... ♖d7 8 0-0 ♖c8 9 ♖bd2 ♖e7 10 ♖b1 (10 ♖e5 cd) 10 ... 0-0 11 ♖d1 ♖fd8 12 ♖e5 ♖xe5 13 de ♖e8 14

♖h5 f5 (Marshall-Rubinstein, Lodz 1908) 15 ef ♖xf6 16 ♖e2 = — Reti, *Masters of the Chess Board*.

5 ef ♖f6

Alternatively:

a) Bogoljubow-Marshall, New York 1924, continued 5 ... c5?! 6 dc ♖a5+ 7 c3 ♖xc5 8 ♖d3 ♖f6 9 0-0 10 ♖bd2 ♖c6 11 ♖e5 ♖d8 12 ♖e1 ♖d7 13 ♖df3 ± (1-0, 56)

b) Alekhine said that 5 ... ♖b6 would be more logical, and after 6 ♖d2 or 6 g3 then 6 ... c5 forcing White to go sooner or later.

6 c3 0-0

7 ♖d3 ♖d6

8 g3 c5 9 dc ♖xc5 10 ♖bd2 ♖c6 11 0-0 ♖d8 12 ♖e2 ♖b6 13 ♖b3 ♖d7 14 ♖bd4 ♖xd4 15 ♖xd4 ♖e8 (to forestall f4-f5) 16 ♖fe1 ♖ac8 17 ♖ad1 a6 18 ♖d2 ♖d6 19 ♖f3 ♖e8 20 ♖d4 ♖c5 ½:½ Selesniev-Marshall, Mährisch-Ostau 1923.

A2

2 ... c5

3 ♖f4

For alternatives see chapter 7. Now for 3 ... e6 see A1 above. Other moves are:

a) 3 ... cd 4 ♖xb8 ♖xb8 5 ♖xd4 b6 6 e4 de? 7 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 8 ♖e5 1-0 Alekhine-Kaufman, Odessa 1918.

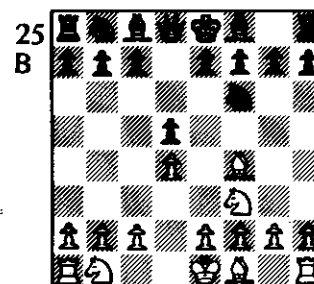
b) 3 ... ♖c6 4 e3 ♖f6 and now 5 c3 (below) or 5 ♖c3?! ♖g4 6 ♖b5 e6 7 h3 ♖h5 (7 ... ♖xf3 8 ♖xf3 a6 9 ♖xc6+ bc ♠ — Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 8 g4 ♖g6 9 ♖e5 ♖b6 10 a4! a5 11 h4! h5 12 ♖xg5 fg 13 gh 14 ♖e2 0-0-0 15 0-0-0 ♖d6 16 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 with an unclear position; Nimzowitsch-Alekhine,

Vilnius 1912.

c) 3 ... ♖b6 4 dc ♖xb2 5 ♖e5 ♖b4+ 6 ♖c3 e6 7 ♖b1 ♖xc5 8 ♖b5 ♖a6 9 e3 f6?! 10 ♖d4 ♖e7 11 ♖xa7 ♖c5 12 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 13 ♖b5+ ♖f7 14 0-0 ♖c7 15 c4 dc 16 ♖xc4 ♖e7 17 ♖e5+! fe 18 ♖f3+ ♖g6 19 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 20 ♖xe6 h5 21 ♖f7+ 1-0 Schlechter-Leonhardt, Carlsbad 1911.

A3

2 ... ♖f6
3 ♖f4(25)



From the diagrammed position Black has tried:

A31 3 ... c5

A32 3 ... e6

Others:

a) 3 ... g6 see chapter 6 (note a to Black's 3rd and line B, *passim*).

b) 3 ... ♖f5 when:

b1) 4 e3 c6 5 ♖d3 e6 6 c3 ♖xd3 7 ♖xd3 ♖e7 8 0-0 ♖h5 9 ♖xb8 ♖xb8 10 ♖bd2 f5 11 ♖e5 0-0 = Karaklajic-Trifunovic, Yugoslav Ch 1956.

b2) 4 c4 e6 5 ♖b3 ♖c8 6 e3 gives White chances for the initiative according to Horowitz.

A31

3 ... c5

White can now choose between:

A311 4 c3

A312 4 e3

A311

4 c3 ♖b6

4 ... cd 5 cd transposes to the Slav Exchange variation of the Queen's Gambit. *see 45 right hand column*

For 4 ... e6 see A32. Not 4 ... c4? 5 ♖bd2 ♖f5 6 ♖h4 e6 (6 ... ♖g6 7 ♖xg6 hg 8 e4! ±) 7 ♖xf5 ef 8 b3 cb? (The last chance was 8 ... b5 9 a4 b4! — Czerniak.) 9 ♖xb3 ♖d7 10 ♖b1 b6 11 ♖xb8! ♖xb8 12 e4 ♖e6 13 ♖b5+ ♖d8 14 e5 ♖e4 15 ♖xe4 fe 16 0-0 f6 17 ♖fd1 ♖c8 18 ♖bc1 g6 19 c4! 1-0 Fairhurst-Keogh, Tel Aviv 1964.

5 ♖b3 ♖c6

6 e3 e6

If 6 ... c4 7 ♖xb6 ab 8 ♖a3 e5 9 ♖b5.

After 6 ... e6:

a) 7 h3 ♖e7 8 ♖bd2 ♖d7 9 ♖e2 0-0 10 0-0 ♖fc8 11 ♖e5 ♖e8 12 ♖g3 ♖d7 13 ♖df3 ♖f8 14 ♖fd1 ♖a5 15 ♖c2 c4 16 ♖d2 f6 17 ♖ef3 ♖g6 18 ♖c1 h6 19 ♖h2 ♖d8 20 ♖f3 (1-0, 37) Janowski-Tarrasch, Ostend 1905.

b) 7 ♖xb6 ab 8 ♖c7?! c4 9 ♖xb6 ♖d6 10 ♖e2 ♖d7 11 ♖c5 ♖xc5 12 dc ♖xc5 13 ♖bd2 e5 14 e4 (desperately trying to break out) 14 ... de 15 ♖g5 ♖d3+ 16 ♖f1 b5 17 ♖gxe4 ♖xb2 18 ♖d6+ ♖e7 19 ♖xb5 ♖a5 20 a4 ♖e6 21 ♖c7 ♖d8 22 ♖xe6 ♖xd2 23 ♖c7 ♖xa4 24 ♖xc4 ♖xc3 25 ♖c1 ♖c2! 26 ♖e1 ♖d7 27 ♖a6 e4 28 g3 ♖e5 29 ♖b4 ♖b2 30 f4 ♖xc4 0-1 Cederquist-Rantanen, Stockholm 1976.

A312

4 e3 d6(26)

Also:

a) 4 ... cd is recommended as safest by Horowitz. After 5 ed a Caro-Kann (Exchange Variation) can arise if White plays c3.

b) 4 ... e6 5 c3 when:

b1) 5 ... d7? 6 d6 0-0 7 d3 see A322.

b2) 5 ... d6 6 d6 and now:

b21) 7 d5 0-0 (7 ... h6!) 8 c2 (8 d2 e5!) 8 ... h6 9 d4 d7! 10 d2 b6 11 d1 d7 12 d3 d6 13 0-0 d3 14 hg d7 15 d5 dxe5 16 de d7 17 f4 f6 18 ef dxf6 19 e4 e5! (Bronstein-Dzhindzhishvili, 39th USSR Ch 1971) is unclear.

b22) 7 d3 when:

b221) 7 ... d3 8 hg d6 9 d5! ± – ECO.

b222) 7 ... d7 8 d5 dxe5 9 de d7 10 d3! ± – ECO.

b223) 7 ... 0-0 8 d3 b6 9 d5 d7 10 0-0 (10 f4!) 10 ... c7 11 f4 d7 12 b1 g6 13 d4 d8 14 d4 f6 15 h3 d5 16 d2 d8 with complications; Winter-Ignatiev, USSR 1970.

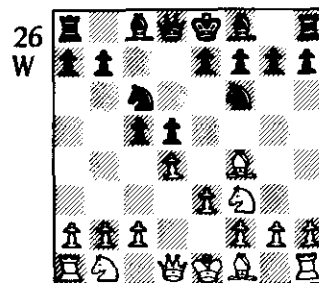
b3) 5 ... d6 6 d1? (6 d3 see A11; 6 d2 d6 7 d6 d7 = – ECO) 6 ... d6 7 h3 (7 d3 d7 8 0-0 d8 = Marshall-Rubinstein, Lodz 1908) and now:

b31) 7 ... d7 8 d3 0-0 9 0-0 (Vidmar-Rotlevi, Carlsbad 1911) 9 ... d7 followed by ... d8 and ... d8 is unclear – ECO.

b32) 7 ... d7 8 d2 d8 9 0-0 d7 10 d6 20-0 11 d1 ± – Horowitz.

Compare chapter 7 (A12) with colours reversed.

c) 4 ... d6! 5 d1 (5 d3 dxb2? 6 d5 but 5 ... c4 6 d1 d5 f) 5 ... d6 6 c3 d5 7 d6 2 (7 d7!) dxc5 8 d6 d8 f Capablanca-Maroczy, New York 1924) 7 ... cd 8 ed d8 9 d2 e6 10 0-0 d7 11 h3 (11 d1! intending d1-g3 – ECO) 11 ... 0-0 12 d1 d8 13 d1 d4 14 d3 d3 15 d3 d5 16 d4 d4! 17 f3 d6 18 d3 hg = Bernstein-Szabo, Groningen 1946.



5 c3

Or 5 d3! d4 6 d5 e6 7 h3:

a) 7 ... d5! 8 g4 d6 9 d5 d6 10 a4! a5 11 h4! h5 12 d3 g6 ± Nimzowitsch-Alekhine, Vilnius 1912.

b) 7 ... dxf3 8 dxf3 cd 9 ed d7 = – ECO.

5 ... d6

Alternatively:

a) 5 ... g6! 6 d6 2 (6 d7 – ECO) 6 ... d6 (Kärner-Bronstein, Tallinn 1973) 7 d3! ± – ECO.

b) 5 ... d4 when:

b1) 6 d6 d6 7 d4 dxf3 8 dxf3 d6 9 d1 d7 10 d3 0-0 11 0-0

d8 = Keres-Reshevsky, Kemer 1937.

b2) 6 d3 d5 7 d5+ d7 8 d4 d4 9 d5 d6 10 d7! dxd7 (10 ... dxa4?? 11 dxf6 mate) 11 d2 a6 12 d2 e6 13 0-0 d8 14 d2 d7 15 a4 f6 16 a5 e5 17 de fe 18 d5+ d8 (18 ... g6 19 d3 g6+) 19 d3 d6 20 d3 e4? 21 d2 d8 22 f3! ef 23 d3 d7 24 e4! de 25 d4 d5 26 d1 d6 27 d4 1-0 Napolitano-Bernstein, 1/2-final 1st World Corres Ch 1947-49.

6 d1!

For 6 d3 see A11.

6 ... d5

7 d4

Or:

a) 7 d3 dxc5 8 d6 d8 9 d3 d3 d6 10 d2 e6 11 d3 d4 f (1/2-1/2, 30) Capablanca-Maroczy, New York 1924.

b) 7 d2 e6 intending ... d8 f – Alekhine.

7 ... d4

8 d2 e6

9 f3! (harmless) 9 ... d6 10 d3 hg 11 d3? (better 11 d3) 11 ... c4 12 d2 d5 13 d2 dxf4 14 ef d6 15 g3 g5! f Watson-Capablanca, London 1922.

A32

3 ... e6

A more conservative plan.

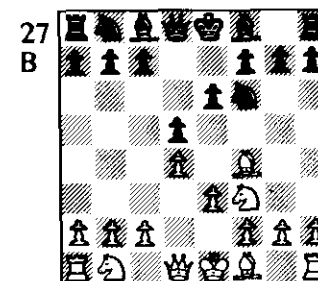
4 e3(27)

4 d6 2 usually transposes. Now:

A321 4 ... d6

A322 4 ... d7

Or 4 ... c5 (4 ... d7 should lead to A322) 5 c3 d6 (5 ... d6 see A31) 6 d6 d6 when:



a) 7 d3? dxf4 8 ef cd 9 cd d6 10 d3 a5! – Grünfeld and Becker, in their book of the Teplitz-Schönau 1922 tournament. This occurred half a century later in Timoschenko-Kupreichik, Rostov 1976 and Black won in 40 moves!

b) 7 d3 0-0 (7 ... d3 8 hg d6 intending ... e5 – Grünfeld and Becker) 8 d3 d7 9 d5 dxe5 (0-1, 49) Schlechter-Rotlevi, Carlsbad 1911.

c) 7 d6 dxd6 8 d5 0-0 9 0-0 d7 10 d2 a6 11 dxc6 dxc6 12 d5 cd 13 ed d5 14 c4 dxc4 15 dxc4 dc 16 dxc4 d8 17 d3 d7 (White's IQP is weak.) 18 d3 d8 19 d1 b5 20 d3 d5 21 d1 d4 22 d3 d4: (fork on e2 and than back rank mate) Burlyayev-Prokhorovich, Moscow 1973.

A321

4 ... d6

5 d6 2

No move is clearly best here. Others that have been tried:

a) 5 d6 cd 6 c3 d6 7 d6 0-0 8 d2 e5 and the exchange on d6

appears to have helped Black; Maroczy-Tartakower, London 1922.
 b) 5 d3!? d4 (5 ... a6 or 5 ... bbd7 6 d3 = ECO) 6 d3 b6?! (ECO recommends 6 ... d7 with the idea ... d3, ... h6 and ... e5.)
 7 c4 0-0 8 c3 b7 9 c2 f5 10 d6 d6 (10 ... cd 11 cd dxc3 12 bc dxd5 13 e4! ± Neikirch and Tsvetkov) 11 0-0 c6 12 d5 dxc3 13 dxc3 bbd7 14 dxd7 dxd7 15 c5 b5 16 a4 ± Makagonov-Kupchik, radio match USSR-USA 1945.
 c) 5 c3 dxf4 6 ef 0-0 7 d3 d6 8 g3 c5 = ECO.
 d) 5 d3 when:
 d1) 5 ... 0-0 6 d2 dxf4 7 ef c5 8 dc d7 9 g3 dxc5 10 0-0 d6 11 c3 transposes to diagram 28 below.
 d2) 5 ... c5 6 c3 d6 is preferable, according to Grünfeld and Becker.
 e) 5 d5 is worth more tests. Two examples:
 e1) 5 ... 0-0 6 d2 c5 7 c3 d6 8 d3 d7 9 ddf3 d4 10 0-0 cd 11 cd f6 12 dxc6 dxf4 13 ef bc 14 g3 b6 15 e2 c5 16 e3 cd 17 dxd4 e5 18 d3 ef 19 dxf4 g5 20 d5 (1-0, 41) Sazonov-Hasin, Spartak Club Ch, Kislovodsk 1967.
 e2) 5 ... dbd7 6 d3 d8 7 d2 dg6 8 c4 (8 d3!? — ECO) 8 ... dxe5 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 de d7 11 f4 d5 = Hodzhayev-Blumenfeld, USSR 1931.

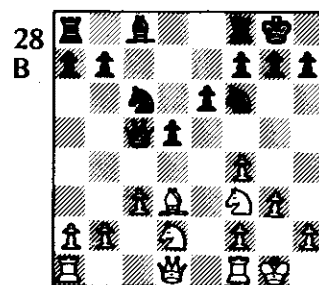
5 ... dxf4

Alternatively:

a) 5 ... b6 6 d3 b7 7 0-0 0-0 8 c3 c5 9 d5 d4 10 d1 dxe5 11 dxe5 d7 12 d4 dxd2 13 dxd2 ± Rubinstein-Cohn, Carlsbad 1907.

b) According to Maroczy, Black could play 5 ... e7, followed by ... bbd7 and perhaps ... e5.

6	ef	c5
7	dc	dxc7
8	g3	dxc5
9	d3	dxc6
10	c3	0-0
11	0-0(28)	



11 ... b5

Other tries:

a) Selesniev-Lasker, Mährisch-Ostrau 1923, went 11 ... d8 12 e2 d6 13 d3 d7 14 d4 dxd4 15 dxd4 d8 16 f6 17 d1 ±.
 b) After 11 ... h6 12 d3 d6 Black has no real play on the d-side. Rubinstein-Tartakower, London 1922, continued 13 d1 d7 14 e2 d8 15 d5 dxe5 16 fe dh7 whereupon Maroczy commented, in the tournament book, that 'The position which Black has now attained does not show in an advantageous light the opening chosen by him.' White won in 46 moves, and though Maroczy indicated subsequent improvements for the defence, no doubt White's play could also have been more

precise. The text move was introduced by Capablanca in a later round of the same event.

12 e2

Rubinstein-Capablanca went 12 d5 b7 13 e2; Maroczy commenting 'Formerly Rubinstein never played so anxiously'. The draw was agreed on the World Champion's proposal, according to Grünfeld and Becker in their book of Teplitz-Schönau 1922. They remark that this was an error by Rubinstein, not only from the sporting standpoint (his acceptance made first prize certain for Capablanca) but also from a chessic standpoint.

12 ... d8

If 12 ... b4 13 c4 is still ±.

13 b4!

Sämisch-Kostic, Teplitz-Schönau 1922, went instead 13 d3 and the game was drawn in 66 moves.

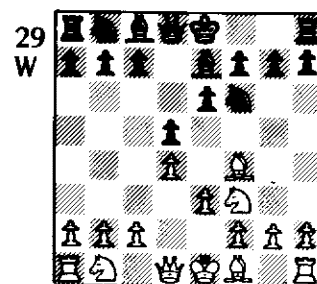
The text move was recommended by Grünfeld and Becker. They pointed out that 13 ... dxc3? is a blunder because of 14 d1, while 13 ... d6 14 d3 yields White a clear positional advantage, e.g. 14 ... a5 15 a3 d7 16 d4 ab 17 ab d6 18 f6 followed by d5! at the right moment. White has a firm grip on the dark squares and Black's bishop is a very poor piece.

A322

4 ... d7(29)

Black intends to preserve his d6 and develop in straightforward fashion.

5 d2



5 d3 0-0 (or 5 ... dbd7) 6 d2 dbd7 below. Possibly better is 6 ... c5 when 7 c3 transposes to A31.

5 ... c5

Alternatively:

a) 5 ... dbd7 6 d3 0-0 and now:

a1) 7 c3!? d8 8 d2 d8 9 d5 d6 10 ddf3 (Ufimtsev-Seredenko USSR 1970) 10 ... f6!? ± or 10 ... c5 ± — ECO.

a2) 7 d5! d8 8 d3 d8 9 g4 dg6 10 g5 dxe5 11 dxe5 d7 12 d8 13 d8 14 d8 15 d8 16 d8 17 d8 18 d8 19 d8 20 d8 21 d8 22 d8 23 d8 24 d8 25 d8 26 d8 27 d8 28 d8 29 d8 30 d8 31 d8 32 d8 33 d8 34 d8 35 d8 36 d8 37 d8 38 d8 39 d8 40 d8 41 d8 42 d8 43 d8 44 d8 45 d8 46 d8 47 d8 48 d8 49 d8 50 d8 51 d8 52 d8 53 d8 54 d8 55 d8 56 d8 57 d8 58 d8 59 d8 60 d8 61 d8 62 d8 63 d8 64 d8 65 d8 66 d8 67 d8 68 d8 69 d8 70 d8 71 d8 72 d8 73 d8 74 d8 75 d8 76 d8 77 d8 78 d8 79 d8 80 d8 81 d8 82 d8 83 d8 84 d8 85 d8 86 d8 87 d8 88 d8 89 d8 90 d8 91 d8 92 d8 93 d8 94 d8 95 d8 96 d8 97 d8 98 d8 99 d8 100 d8

a3) 7 h4!? d8 8 g4 d8 9 g5 d6 10 d5 d6 11 g6!? (11 h5 — Rabar, *Informator* 4) 11 ... hg (11 ... dxc6 12 d5!) 12 h5!? (Rabar preferred 12 ddf3.) 13 ... dxe5? (Rabar's 12 ... g5! 13 d1 f6 would give an unclear position.) 13 de g5 14 d1! f6 (14 ... gf!? 15 dg4 g6 16 hg f5! was the last chance — Rabar.) 15 ef gf 16 d3 d7 17 d5 d8 18 h6 d8 19 d8 20 d5 d7 21 d8 22 d8 23 0-0-0 dxf2 24 d5 1-0 Rakic-Marovic, Yugoslavia 1967.

b) 5 ... b6 6 d3 c5 7 c3 0-0 8 e5 below.

6 c3 0-0

Stadler-Aronson, Subbotica 1967, went instead 6 ... d6 7 d3 b6 8 h3 b7 9 0-0 a5? (Simply 9 ... 0-0 is better – Maric, *Informator* 4.) 10 e5 dxe5 11 dxe5 d6? 12 b5+ e7 13 f4 ± (1-0, 30).

7 d3 d6

7 ... b6 allows 8 e5 b7 (8 ... d6?! 9 d6! ± – Hort) 9 f3 e.g.: a) 9 ... d6 10 h3 g6 11 h6 e8 12 f4 and Black has little counterplay against White's e-side pressure. Rakic-Cvetkovic, Yugoslavia 1968, went on 12 ... c4 13 d2 b5 14 d3 dxe5 15 fe d4 16 0-0 f5 17 ef dxf6 18 e5 dxe5 19 de e7 20 dxe4 de 21 f6 e5 22 f4 f1 ead8 23 g4 (threatens 24 f6 g6+ hg 25 f6 g6+ h8 26 f7) 23 ... e7 24 f6 e6+! 1-0 (24 ... h8 25 f6 e8+ e8 26 f7+).

b) 9 ... d6 is only a slight improvement. White continues with his attack in the same way, but Black at least has d7 as a retreat square for his other knight at move 12; Pribyl-Penrose, Nice 1974 (1-0, 38).

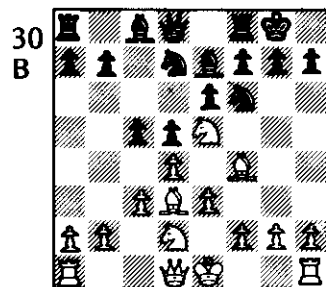
8 e5!?(30)

Just the same! This is probably better than:

a) 8 g4?! d4 9 h3 d6 10 e5 d8 11 e2 f5 (0-1, 40) Rakic-Janosevic, Novi Sad 1973.

b) or 8 h4!? e8 9 g4 cd 10 cd b4 11 e2 d8 12 g5 d4 13 a3 d2 14 d2 d6 15 dxd6 e6 16 f4 d7 17 h5 e6 18 h6 g6 (½:½, 37) Rakic-Bikovsky, Belgrade 1967.

c) However 8 e2 is worth considering, Black's choice then resting between 8 ... b6 (when d6 by White is in the air) and 8 ... h5 (9 d6!?). A good example of how Black should not play such positions was given by Spielmann, who should have known better, at Baden-Baden 1925. He played 8 ... c4? and Tarrasch immediately seizes the initiative in the centre by 9 d2 b5 10 e4 de 11 dxe4 b7 12 0-0 (It is not clear whether 12 d6! is better.) 12 ... dxe4 13 dxe4 dxe4 14 e4 d6 15 e2 ± (Black's e-side pawns are weak.) and 1-0 in 40 moves.



8 ... dxe5
9 dxe5 b6
10 f3 d6

Once again, because of the blocked centre, White has good prospects of e-side attack, and if Black defends weakly the game will not last long. Jovanovic-Baumstarck, women's zonal, Karlovy Vary 1975, continued 11 e3 d8 12 h3 g6 13 d3 d6 14 h6. Now White threatens simply h2-h4 followed by f3-g5 and mate on h7. So Black is

reduced to desperation; she played 14 ... dxe5 15 d6 e6 16 e7 d7 17 e8 and White won in 31 moves.

B

1 d4 d6
2 f3

2 d4 looks premature. Ribeiro-Seret, Nice 1974, continued 2 ... e6 3 e3 c5 4 c3 d7 5 d6 b6 6 d6 7 0-0 d3 cd 8 cd d6 with a good game for Black.

2 ... e6

Or 2 ... b6 (compare chapter 4) 3 d4 b7 4 d6 c5 5 e3 e6 6 d3 d7 7 h3 cd 8 ed d6 9 c3 d6 10 e2 e7 11 0-0 a6 12 e1 b5 13 d4 (1-0, 41) Tarrasch-Reti, Semmering 1926. For 2 ... g6 3 d4 see chapter 6.

3 d4 c5

3 ... d5 transposes to A32.

Black's best policy may be to follow Bleiman-Korchnoi, Beer-sheva 1978: 3 ... b6 4 e3 d7 5 h3 d6 6 d6 d7 7 d2 e7 8 a4 c5 9 d6 g6 10 0-0 d6 11 e2 0-0 12 f1 d5 = (0-1, 40 after ups and downs). Note, however, that by 4 or 5 c4 White can transpose into the irregular variation of the Queen's Indian Defence with which Miles twice defeated Spassky in 1978. (1 d4 d6 2 c4 e6 3 d3 b6 4 d4 d7 5 e3 d7 6 h3 0-0 7 d3 d5 8 cd ed 9 d3 c5 10 0-0 d6 11 d5 ±).

4 c3

4 e3 cd (4 ... d6 see A) 5 ed d6 6 c3 d7 7 d3 d5 (e.g. Georgadze-Blatny, Decin 1975) is a transposition to the Exchange Variation

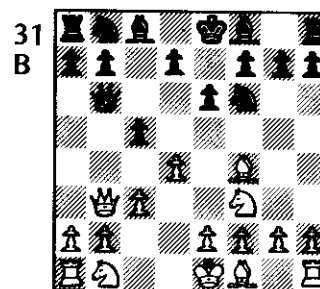
of the Caro-Kann: 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c3 d6 5 d4 etc.

4 ... e6

Against other moves White builds up much as in A, with e3, d6, d3 etc.

5 e3! (31)

Bronstein's move, which improves upon 5 e2 cd 6 cd d6 7 e3 d7 8 d3 d8 9 d2 d6 10 0-0 d7 = von Scheve-Tarrasch, Dresden 1892.



Now Black can double the white b-pawn, giving White control of the a-file, or face the possibility of e6. White is rather better placed to exploit a doubled b-pawn because of his lead in development.

5 ... d5

This is an ingenious attempt to resolve the dilemma. 5 ... e6 6 ab cd would be answered by 7 d4 d8 8 d6.

Another example is the game Bronstein-Farago, Moscow-Budapest match 1971: 5 ... d6 6 e3 e6 7 ab b6 8 h3 d7 9 dc bc 10 d6 b7 11 d6 d6 12 d4 d5 13 d2 d6 14 d4 dxc4 15 bc d6 16 0-0 0-0 17 d2 d8 18 e4 e5 19 b3 g6 20 d2 d5 21 f1 d4

22 g3 ♖h6 23 f4 ♜c6 24 ♜b2 ef 25 gf (Bronstein has been consistently capturing towards the centre.) 25 ... ♙g7 26 e5 de 27 f5! ♖d7 (27 ... gf 28 ♙xf5+ ♜b8 29 ♜e4) 28 ♜e4 ♖hd8 29 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 30 ♜xc5 ♖c7 31 ♜e4 ♖d7 32 ♙g1 ♙h6 33 c5 ♙f4 34 ♜d6+ ♜c7 35 b4 ♜e7 36 f6 ♜g8 37 ♜xb7 ♜xb7 38 c6+! (the *coup de grace*) 38 ... ♜xc6 39 ♙a4+ ♜c7 40 ♙xd7 ♜xd7 41 ♖a1 ♜xf6 42 ♖xa6 ♜d5 43 b5 e4 44 c4 ♜c7 45 ♖a7 e3 46 b6 1-0.

With 5 ... ♜d5 we follow Bronstein-Averbakh, 32nd USSR Ch 1964-65. The notes are based on those by Mikenas in the tournament bulletin:

6 ♙g3 f5

This move is consistent with the previous one, as it prevents e4 and so maintains central position of the knight. The drawback is that it gives control of e5 to White and makes the development of the ♜c8 even more difficult.

7 e3 ♜c6

8 ♙c4

This is a good continuation, forcing the exchange of queens under favourable circumstances.

8 ... ♜a5

9 ♜xb6 ♜xb6

10 ♙e2 ♜c6

11 ♜bd2 d5

Black hopes to give the position a blocked, drawish character. However, as in the preceding game against Farago, Bronstein instructively makes use of his long-term advantages — better bishops and

control of e5....

12 0-0 ♙d7

13 dc ♙xc5

14 c4! dc

15 ♜xc4 ♜xc4

16 ♙xc4 ♙e7

16 ... 0-0 17 ♖fd1 ♙c8 18 ♖ac1 ±

17 ♖ad1 ♖d8

18 h4

With the idea of 19 ♜g5.

18 ... ♙c8

18 ... h6 is met by 19 h5 with the threat of 20 ♜h4!

19 ♖xd8+ ♙xd8

20 ♖d1 ♙f6

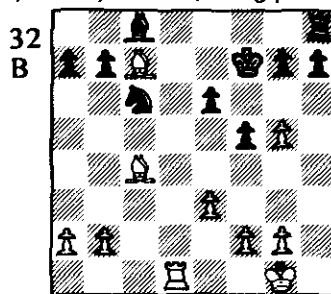
20 ... h6 21 h5 ♜f7 22 ♜h4! ♙xh4 23 ♙xh4 is also very difficult for Black.

21 ♜g5 ♙xg5

22 hg ♜f7

23 ♙c7(32)

This prevents Black from playing ... ♖d8. White's advantage consists in his two good bishops against a bad bishop and a knight, whose sphere of action is severely circumscribed. The realisation of this superiority was surprisingly swift.



23 ... ♖e8

24 f4 ♖e7

25 ♙d6 ♖d7

26 ♜f2 ♖d8

Up to now Black has defended well, but here he chose the wrong plan. 26 ... a6 was better, so that 27 g4 could be met by 27 ... ♜a5 28 ♙e2 b5.

27 g4 fg

Here 27 ... g6 was a better defence, enabling Averbakh to answer 28 gf gf 29 ♙e2 or 29 e4 by 29 ... ♜g6!

28 ♜g3 b6

28 ... g6 was still better.

29 f5

Threatening 30 fe+ ♙xe6 31 ♖f1+.

29 ... ♙e5

30 ♙b3 b5

31 fe+ ♙xe6

32 ♙xe5 ♖xd1

33 ♙xd1 1-0

Summary

The London (♙f4) system has not yet been investigated as deeply as the Colle, but it appears to offer White more chances than the latter of outplaying strong opposition. The best methods for both sides may still be awaiting discovery. For the time being, the relative rarity of the opening is a great argument in its favour from White's point of view. In the next chapter I show how it can also be used against ... g6 as well as ... e6.

6 London v. King's Indian (... g6)

When White avoids c4 against the King's Indian Defence, and develops his queen's bishop to f4, Black is often inclined to take his task too lightly. Yet the London System is a major line against the Reti Opening, and here White has it with an extra tempo! Grandmasters sometimes employ the London when they hope to take their opponent out of 'the books' but, as this chapter shows, some of the variations have in fact been investigated well into the middle-game.

1 d4 e6
2 e3 g6
3 f4

The characteristic introductory move of the London System, 3 c3 is sometimes played first but there is no need to sacrifice flexibility so early, since there is no immediate threat against d4.

The Pseudo-London System, 3 e3 d5 4 f4, will be discussed separately at the end of this chapter.

3 ... g7(33)

Black in turn awaits developments, although more committal plans are also sometimes seen:

a) 3 ... d5 4 e3 and now:

a1) 4 ... c5 5 e2 (5 e2!?) 5 ... e6 is a sort of reversed Catalan; after 6 e2 or 6 d3 compare B below. Even 6 e5! has some point, but not 6 d6? e5 7 e2 g7 8 c3 e5 9 e5 0-0 10 h4?! e6 11 e3 e6 12 h5 e4 13 e3 a5 14 e1 d7 15 hg hg 16 e2 e5 (0-1, 39) Thelen-Sajtar, Prague 1943.

a2) 4 ... g7 5 h3 (better 5 e2 see B) 5 ... 0-0 6 e2 c6! 7 c3 e5 8 e2 e6 9 e5 e8! 10 e3 e5 11 e5 f6 12 e2 e6 13 e3 e7 14 e6 ed 15 0-0 e8 16 c4 dc 17 e4 d5 18 d3 e6 = Besser-Hort, Halle 1967.

b) 3 ... c5 when:

b1) 4 c3 will often transpose to lines considered below. An exception was Lasker-Alekhine, New York 1924, which continued 4 ... b6 (4 ... g7 5 d6! Bronstein-Westerninen, Tallinn 1973; or 5 e3) 5 e2 (better 5 e3 – Alekhine)

5 ... cd! 6 cd e7 7 e3 g7 8 d3 0-0 9 0-0 e6 10 h3 d6 11 e2 a6 12 e1 e8 13 e2 a7 14 a3 e8 15 e1 b5 = (½:½, 30).
b2) 4 dc e5+ 5 e3 e5 (5 ... e4 6 e5 f6 7 d4 is unclear – Gheorghiu, *Chess Player* 4) 6 e4 g7 7 d2! d6 8 e3 e6 9 e2 e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 e3 e7 12 f3 a6 13 a4 b6 14 e1 e7 15 e1 a2 e5 16 e1 ± (1-0, 49) Taimanov-Spiridonov, Malaga 1973.

c) 3 ... e5! 4 g5! (Franklin) e.g. 4 ... h6 5 e4 g5 6 g3 g7 7 e3 c5 8 e2 d6 9 e4 e6 10 c3 f5! 11 e5 e3 12 e6 bc 13 hg; obtaining the two bishops is not worth the light square weaknesses Black incurs thereby.

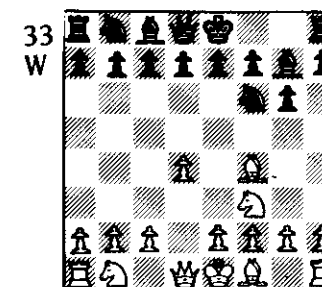
d) In *The King's Indian Defence*, Barden says that if 3 ... d6, White must play 4 h3 (see below) if he wants to maintain his dark-squared bishop. However, 4 e3 is playable. Franklin-Gligoric, Hastings 1971-2, continued 4 ... e5 5 g5 h6 6 e4 g5 7 e2 d6 8 g3 e5 9 d3 e3 10 hg g7 and Franklin said he obtained a good opening. However, somewhere in the next few moves he lost his way: 11 c3 e7 12 e3 e6 13 e2 c6 14 e2 e7 15 e5 (15 e4! – Gligoric) 15 ... e5 16 e5 e6 17 e2 0-0-0 18 0-0-0 e8 19 e1 c5! ± (0-1, 57).

A 4 c3

B 4 e2

C 4 e3

Move-order is quite flexible in the early stages so the reader should



watch out for transpositions. The main questions are: does White play h3?; does he play e2?; does he play c3?; does Black play ... d5?

4 e3 transposes to the Pseudo-London System. 4 h3 is premature, and Black might possibly reply 4 ... c5!?

A

4 c3

The objection to this move is that it wastes a tempo. White should not play this unless it is really necessary.

4 ... b6!?

More usual is 4 ... d6 which would transpose to B or C.

5 e3 d7

6 e2

Or 6 e2 c5 (6 ... d6 7 h3 see C11.) 7 h3 0-0 8 e2 d6 9 0-0 e6 = Smyslov-Geller, USSR Teams Ch 1961. Or 8 e4 d5 9 d3 e7 10 0-0 e4 (Belavenets-Smyslov, Moscow-Leningrad 1939) but the immediate 8 d3 may be better.

6 ... d6

7 h3 0-0

8 0-0 e2

9 a4 a6 10 ♖h2 e6 11 ♜b3 ♜e7 12 ♜d1 e5 (12 ... ♜fd8 – Yudovich, *Informator* 4) 13 de de 14 ♜a3! c5 (14 ... ♜fe8 – Yudovich) 15 ♜bd2 e4 16 ♜e1 ♜e5 17 ♜c4 ♜xc4 18 ♜xc4 and White has pressure; Sorokin-Antoshin, USSR 1967.

B

4 ♜bd2

The move I favour. It keeps Black guessing whether White might play e2-e4.

4 ... d5!?(34)

Others:

a) 4 ... c5! 5 c3 (5 e3! below) 5 ... cd 6 cd 0-0 7 e3 ♜c6 8 h3 d6 9 ♜c4 ♜f5 10 0-0 ♜c8 = Keres-Gheorghiu, Varna 1962.

b) 4 ... 0-0 and now:

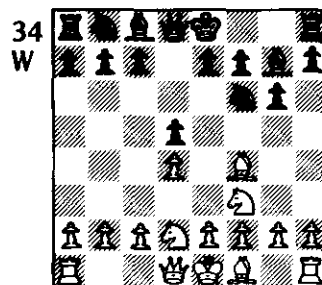
b1) 5 e3 d6 transposes to C. This may well be White's most precise move-order in the London System. b2) 5 c3 ♜h5! (5 ... d6 see C; if 6 h3 c5) 6 ♜e5! f6 7 g4! fe 8 gh ed 9 cd! gh (9 ... c5 10 hg cd 11 gh+ ♜h8 12 ♜h4 ♜b6 13 ♜g1 – Neistadt and Fridstein) 10 e3 d5 11 ♜d3 ♜f5 (11 ... c5! 12 ♜g5 ♜g4) 12 ♜xf5 ♜xf5 13 ♜h4 ♜f6 (or 13 ... ♜g5 14 ♜df3 ♜g4 15 h3 ♜e4 16 ♜f5 with a strong white attack) 14 ♜xh5 e6 15 ♜g1 c5 16 ♜df3 ♜d7 17 0-0-0 ♜c8 18 ♜b1 ♜c7 19 ♜xg7+! ♜xg7 20 ♜g1+ ♜h8 21 ♜e5 (21 ♜g6+ is also possible.) 21 ... ♜xe5 22 de ♜f5 23 ♜xf5 ef 24 ♜xf5 ♜g7 25 ♜d1 ♜g5 26 ♜f4 ♜g6 27 h4 ♜b6 28 ♜f7 d4 29 e6 ♜g8 30 ♜f6+ ♜g7 31 ♜d8 ♜g8 32 e7 ♜e6 33 ♜g1! 1-0 Bronstein-Kots, 29th USSR Ch 1961.

b3) 5 e4 d6 6 c3 (6 ♜d3 Watson-Euwe, London 1922; 6 ♜e2 Quinteros-Uhlmann, Leningrad 1973) and now:

b31) 6 ... ♜bd7 7 ♜c4 c6 8 0-0 ♜xe4 9 ♜xe4 d5 = Keres-Matulovic, USSR-Yugoslavia 1961.

b32) 6 ... ♜c6 is inferior: 7 ♜b5 (or 7 ♜c4 ♜g4 8 d5! Bronstein-Hug, quick-play match 1975) 7 ... ♜d7 8 0-0 e5 9 ♜g5 ♜e8 10 ♜c1! a6 11 ♜a4 ♜b6 12 ♜b3 ♜g4 13 h3! ♜xf3 14 ♜xf3 ed 15 cd ♜xe4 16 d5 ± Keres-Polugayevsky, 26th USSR Ch 1959.

c) 4 ... d6 5 e4 (5 e3 see C) 5 ... c6 (simpler 5 ... 0-0: Modern Defence) 6 h3 0-0 7 ♜d3 ♜bd7 8 0-0 ♜h5 9 ♜e3 e5 10 c3 ♜f4 11 ♜xf4 ef 12 ♜a1 ♜e8 13 ♜c4 ♜b6 14 ♜a5 h6 15 b4 ♜e7 16 ♜c2 ♜e6 17 ♜d2 g5 18 ♜d3 d5 19 e5 (1-0, 34) Spassky-Zilberman, USSR Spartakiad 1975.



5 e3

Best, in view of:

a) 5 c3 0-0 6 e3 b6 7 h3 c5 8 ♜d3 ♜b7 9 0-0 ♜c6 10 ♜b1 ♜d7 11 ♜g5 ♜b8 12 b4 e5 (centre counter to wing attack) 13 bc?! (13 ♜b5 f6 14 ♜h4 ♜d6 or 14 ... a6 is also good

for Black.) 13 ... e4 14 c4 ef (14 ... ed? 15 cd threatening 16 c6) 15 cd fg 16 ♜c1 ♜xd4! 17 c6?! (17 ed bc!? 18 ♜c3 or 17 ... ♜xd4 18 c6 is still a bit unclear.) 17 ... ♜xc6 18 bc ♜xc6 19 ♜f4 ♜b7 20 ♜e4 ♜e5 21 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 22 ♜b4 ♜ad8 23 ♜c2 a5 0-1 Larsen-Olafsson, Bergen Dal 1960. More material is lost.

b) 5 h3 0-0 6 e3 c5 (6 ... ♜bd7 7 c4!) 7 c3 b6 8 ♜d3 ♜b7 (8 ... ♜a6!? 9 ♜xa6 ♜xa6 10 ♜a4 ±) 9 ♜e5 ♜fd7 10 ♜df3 ♜c6 (10 ... f6 11 ♜xg6!?) 11 h4 cd (11 ... f6!?) 12 ♜xc6 ♜xc6 13 cd ± Spielmann-Prins, Sitges 1934.

5 ... 0-0

Or 5 ... c5 6 c3:

a) 6 ... ♜b6!? 7 ♜b3! 0-0 8 ♜xb6 ab 9 ♜c7 ♜fd7 10 ♜b5 ♜a5 11 ♜g3 ± Bronstein-Bertok, Vinkovci 1970. b) ECO suggests 6 ... ♜bd7 7 ♜d3 0-0, intending ... b6, ... ♜b7 =.

6 ♜d3

Alternatively:

a) 6 h3 see note b above. b) 6 c4!? possibly? c) 6 ♜e2 (e2 is probably a better square than d3 for this piece) 6 ... c5 7 0-0 ♜bd7 (7 ... cd?! 8 ed ♜c6 9 c3 ♜h5 10 ♜e3 ♜e7 11 ♜e1 ♜g4 12 ♜b3 ∞ though White won in Keres-Bronstein, 26th USSR Ch 1959) 8 c3 b6 9 h3 ♜b7 10 ♜e5 e6 (or 10 ... ♜xe5 11 ♜xe5 ♜d7 = Doda-Hamann, Lugano 1968) 11 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 12 ♜e5 ♜fc8 13 ♜e1 ♜c6 14 f4 ♜b5 = Flatow-Byrne, Lugano 1968.

6 ... c5

Other tries:

a) 6 ... ♜bd7 7 c3 b6 8 ♜e5 ♜b7 9 h4!? ♜h5! 10 g4 ♜xf4 11 ef ♜xe5 12 fe f6 13 h5? (13 f4 = ECO) 13 ... fe 14 hg e4 ± Safvat-Badilles, Moscow 1956.

b) 6 ... b6 7 c3 ♜b7 8 ♜e2 c5 9 0-0 ♜c6 10 ♜e5 ♜h5 11 ♜xc6 ♜xf4 12 ef ♜xc6 = Kulzinski-Andric, Yugoslav Ch 1948-9.

7 c3 ♜c6

Other ideas include:

a) 7 ... ♜b6 8 ♜b1 ♜c6 9 h3 ♜e8 10 0-0 ♜f5 11 ♜xf5 gf 12 ♜e5 ± Bisguier-Bertok, Leipzig 1960.

b) 7 ... ♜bd7 8 h4! ♜e8 9 h5 ♜xh5 10 ♜xh5 gh 11 ♜xh7+ ♜f8 (11 ... ♜xh7 12 ♜g5+ ♜g6 13 ♜df3) 12 ♜e5 ♜xe5 13 de ♜g4 14 f3 ♜d7 15 ♜f1 e6 16 ♜g3 h4 17 ♜h5 h3 18 g4 ♜h4+ 19 ♜g3 h2 20 ♜f2 ♜h3 21 ♜h1 ♜b5 22 ♜xh2 ± McAlpine-McCurdy, Student Olympiad, Orebro 1966.

c) 7 ... b6!? was an old Barden recommendation. Gulko-Vaganian, Niksic 1978, continued 8 a4 ♜a6 9 ♜xa6 ♜xa6 10 0-0 ♜c8 11 ♜e2 ♜b7 12 h3 ♜fd8 13 ♜fe1 ♜ac8 14 ♜e5 ♜b8! (intending ... ♜c6) 15 e4 cd 16 ♜xd4 de 17 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 18 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 19 ♜xe4 ♜c6! = (19 ... ♜xd4? 20 ♜xd4 e6 21 a5) ½:½.

8 0-0 ±

Here Black has tried:

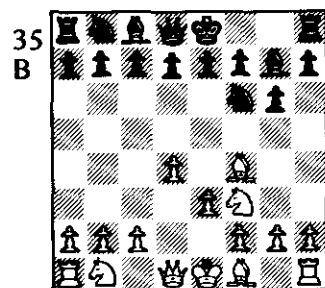
a) 8 ... ♜d7 9 ♜b5 ♜d6 10 ♜a4 a6 11 ♜xc6 bc 12 b4 c4 13 e4 ♜f6 14 ♜e5 ♜b5 15 ♜xb5 cb 16 a4 ♜b7 17 f3 ± Kan-Cherepkov, ½-final 17th USSR Ch 1949.

b) 8 ... ♜h5 9 ♜g4 ♜d6 10 dc ♜xc5 11 e4 ♜f6 12 h3 de 13 ♜xe4 ♜xe4

14 ♖xe4 ♖e6 15 ♗a4 ♖c4 16 ♖e3
 ♗b5 17 ♗xb5 ♖xb5 18 ♖fd1 ♖fd8
 19 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 20 ♖d1 (1-0, 41)
 Belyavsky-Faibisovich, Leningrad
 Club Ch 1967.

C

4 e3(35)



C1 4 ... 0-0

C2 4 ... d6

Or 4 ... c5 5 c3 0-0 6 ♖bd2 ♖c6!?
 (6 ... d6 or 6 ... b6) 7 dcl h6 8 h3
 ♗a5 9 ♖g3 ♗a4 10 ♖e2 b6!? 11 0-0
 ♖a6 12 cb ab 13 ♖e1 ♖xe2 14
 ♗xe2 g5 15 ♖e5 (or 15 ♖h2 g4 16
 hg ♖xg4 17 ♖g3 ± Gheorghiu) 15
 ... ♖xe5 16 ♖xe5 de 17 ♖d4! ♖e4
 18 ♖ec6 e6 19 ♗b5! ♗xb5 20
 ♖xb5 ♖f6 21 f3 ♖d2 22 e4 de 23 fe
 ♖c4 24 e5! ± Voiculescu-Puscasu,
 Romanian Ch 1974.

C1

4 ... 0-0

5 ♖bd2

Spassky-Bukic, Bugojno 1978,
 featured a novel plan for White: 5
 ♖e2 d6 6 0-0 ♖bd7 7 h3 ♗e8 8
 c4!? e5 9 ♖h2 ♗e7 10 ♖c3 e4 11
 ♖d2 ♖e8 12 ♖b5 ♗d8 13 c5.
 Spassky now sacrificed a piece by
 13 ... a6 14 cd! and eventually won.

See the game in Chapter 1,
 p. 1.

5 ♖bd2 is still the most flexible
 choice otherwise. Lines without
 ♖bd2 are discussed in C2 if Black
 replies ... d6. If instead he chooses
 ... d5 see these examples:

a) 5 c3 d5 6 ♖d3 ♖c6 7 ♖e5 ♖xe5
 8 ♖xe5 c6 9 ♖d2 ♖e6 10 0-0 ♗d7 =
 Spiridonov-Malich, Zinnowitz 1967.
 b) 5 ♖c4 d5 6 ♖b3 c5 7 c3 b6 8 0-0
 ♖c6 Volynskaya-Dimshits, Lenin-
 grad Cup 1972.

c) 5 h3 c5 (5 ... b6, see below) 6 c3
 and now:

c1) 6 ... d5 (6 ... b6!?) 7 ♖bd2 b6 8
 b4 ♖e4 9 ♖xe4 de 10 ♖d2 ♖b7 11
 bc bc is unclear, or even favours
 Black, Hindle-Taulbut, London
 1975.

c2) 6 ... d6 7 ♖d3 b6 8 0-0 ♖b7 9
 ♗e2 ♖e4 10 ♗c2 d5 11 ♖bd2
 (Chiburdanidze suggested 11 ♖xe4
 de 12 ♖g5.) 11 ... ♖d6 12 ♖fe1
 ♖d7 13 ♖e5 ♖c8 14 ♖h2 ♖f6 15
 ♖ad1 b5 16 dc?! ♖xc5 17 ♖b3 ♖c8
 18 ♗e2 ♗b6 ♖ (0-1, 46) Kushnir-
 Chiburdanidze, Candidates 1978.

c3) 6 ... cd 7 cd ♖c6 8 h3? (O'Kelly
 suggested 8 ♖e2 ♖h5 9 ♖e3 with
 the threat 10 d5, in his book on
 Petrosian.) 8 ... d6 9 ♖c4?! b5! 10
 ♖e3 b4 11 d5 (11 c4 d5 ♖) 11 ...
 bc!! ♖ Kotov-Petrosian, Moscow
 1952.

5 ... d6(36)

This is the main London System
 pattern. However, 5 ... b6 is also
 possible, e.g.:

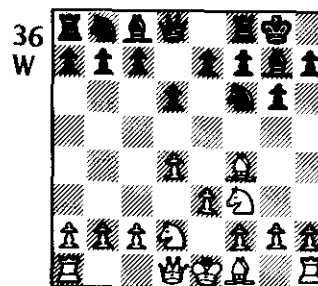
a) 6 c3 c5 7 h3 d6 8 ♖e2 ♖a6 9
 ♖xa6 ♖xa6 10 0-0 ♗d7 11 ♗e2

♖c7 12 dc bc 13 e4 e5 (0-1, 32)
 Bondarevsky-Bronstein, 31st USSR
 Ch 1963.

b) 6 ♖e2 ♖b7 7 0-0 c5 8 c3 d6 9 h3
 ♖c6 (9 ... ♖bd7!? 10 a4 a6 11 ♖c4
 ♗c7 is unclear - Taimanov, *Chess
 Player* 9.) 10 a4 a6 (10 ... ♗c7
 intending ... ♖ad8) 11 ♖h2 h6?!
 (11 ... ♗c7 intending ... e5) 12 ♖e1
 ♖c8 13 ♖f1 d5?! 14 ♖b1! ♖e8 15
 ♖b3! ± (1-0, 44) Taimanov-
 Lechtynsky, Decin 1975.

c) 6 h3 c5 7 c3 ♖b7 8 ♖d3 (8 ♖e2
 is not much better.) 8 ... d6 (or 8 ...
 d5!? Slujssar-Karpov, Caracas 1970)
 9 ♗e2 ♖c6 10 0-0 ♗c7 11 ♖a6
 ♖xa6 12 ♗xa6 e5 13 de de 14 ♖h2
 ♖ad8 15 ♖ad1 ♖d5 16 e4 ♖d7 17
 ♗e2 ♖fd8 18 ♖fe1 ♗d6 ♖ Gasic-
 Szabo, Sarajevo 1972.

In most of these examples Black
 did well. However, White should
 perhaps not play h3 and should
 probably develop his king's bishop
 on c4 (though Black's delaying ...
 d6 makes this a riskier proposition).



C11 6 h3

C12 6 c3

C13 6 ♖c4

C11

6 h3

c5!?

It is natural to react vigorously to
 a slow move like h3, but perhaps
 Black should seek his counterplay
 in a different way? Consider:

a) 6 ... ♗e8 7 ♖h2 ♖fd7 8 ♖c4 ♖c6
 9 0-0 e5 10 de ♖dx5 (The pawn
 recapture might leave Black's
 position congested.) 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5
 12 ♖b3 ♖e6 13 ♖f3 ♖xf3+ 14
 ♗xf3 ♗b5 and Black had the
 initiative; Franklin-Alexander,
 British Ch 1956.

b) 6 ... ♖c6 7 ♖h2 (7 c3 or 7 ♖b5
 would be more positive.) 7 ... ♗e8
 8 ♖e2 e5 9 de ♖xe5 is at least equal
 for Black; Smyslov-Gligoric, Venice
 1957.

c) 6 ... ♖bd7 7 c3 c5 below. Maybe
 6 ... ♖fd7!?

d) 6 ... b6 7 c3 see C12.

7 ♖e2

A major alternative is 7 c3 ♖c6 8
 ♖c4. As Maroczy wrote in the
 London 1922 tournament book:
 'By far the best square for the
 bishop. If Black now plays ... d5,
 White's QB's diagonal is cleared of
 all obstacles. On the other hand ...
 e5 leaves the KB in his strong
 position.' Examples:

a) 8 ... ♖e8 9 0-0 e5 10 de:

a1) 10 ... ♖xe5? 11 ♖xe5! de 12
 ♖g5! ♖e6 (rather better is 12 ...
 ♖f8 13 ♖de4! ♗xd1 14 ♖fxd1 ♖e4
 15 ♖xe4 b6 - Alekhine) 13 ♖xe6 ±
 Alekhine-Euwe, London 1922.

a2) 10 ... de 11 ♖h2 ± (because
 there is a hole at d5) - Alekhine.

b) 8 ... ♗e8 9 ♖h2 e5 10 de de 11

♖b5 ♘d7 12 ♘e4 ♗e6 13 ♗d6
 ♗xd6 14 ♘xd6 ♘db8 15 0-0 b6
 16 ♖c4 ♖d7 17 ♖d5 ♖e6 18 ♖xe6
 ♖e 19 ♘b5 ♘a6 20 ♖d6 ♘d8 ± Kan-
 Kamyshev, ½-final 17th USSR Ch
 1949.

c) 8 ... ♘d7 (Alekhine) 9 d5 (9 0-0
 e5) 9 ... ♘ce5 10 ♖e2 ♘b6 11 ♗b3
 ♘xf3+ 12 g4 e5 (12 ... e6!?) 13 ♖g3
 f5 14 f4 ♗e8 15 a4 e4 16 ♖h4 ♖f7
 17 a5 ♘d7 18 ♖b5 ♗f8 19 ♘c4 ♘f6
 20 a6 ♖b8 21 ♖c6 b5 22 ♖a5 b4 23
 ♘e5!? (1-0, 38) Rupp-Arseniev, 1st
 ICCF Cup corres.

d) 8 ... a6 9 a4 cd 10 ed?! (or cd
 ♖f5 =) 10 ... ♖b8 11 0-0 b5 ♖ -
 Boleslavsky.

7 ... ♘c6
 8 dc!

A noteworthy improvement upon
 the unambitious 8 ♖h2. Smyslov-
 Boleslavsky, Zurich 1953, continued
 8 ... cd 9 ed ♖d7 10 0-0 ♖c8 11
 ♖e1 a6 12 ♖f1 b5 13 c3 ♘a5 14
 ♘g5 ♖e8 15 ♘ge4 ♘xe4 16 ♘xe4
 ♘c4 17 ♖b1 ½:½.

8 ... dc
 9 ♘c4 ♘d5!
 10 ♖h2

Now:

a) 10 ... b5? 11 ♘ce5 ♘xe5 12
 ♘xe5 ♗a5+ 13 c3 ♖b7 14 0-0 ±
 Harding-Quinn, British Ch Qualify-
 ing 1974.

b) 10 ... b6 11 0-0 ♖b7 12 c3 ♖e8
 13 e4 ♘f6 14 e5 (14 ♗c2 ♘a5!) 14
 ... ♘d5 (14 ... ♘d7 15 e6!?) 15 ♗b3
 ♘c7 16 ♘g5! ♖f8 17 ♖ad1 ♗e8 18
 e6 ± Harding-Franks, London
 League 1975.

C12

6 c3

This shores up the black squares,
 but encourages counterplay on the
 light ones by a ♗-fianchetto.

6 ... b6

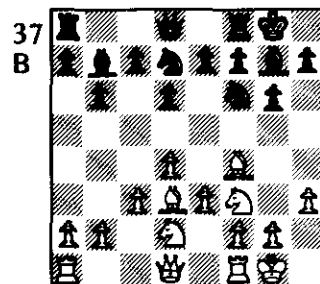
Or:

a) 6 ... ♘bd7 7 ♖c4 ♗e8 8 c3 see
 C13.

b) 6 ... ♘c6 7 h3 see C11.

7 h3 ♖b7
 8 ♖c4 ♘bd7
 9 0-0(37)

This is an important position as it
 can be reached by many widely-
 differing move-orders. Although it
 is generally considered good for
 Black - who has a flexible position
 thanks to the choice available
 between ... c5 and ... e5 - Michael
 Franklin is still willing to take the
 white pieces.



9 ... ♗e8

Black continues to play as in a
 reversed Reti Opening. The point of
 this move is to prepare ... e5
 without ... c5 but other plans also
 come into consideration:

a) 9 ... ♘e4 10 ♘xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♗e2
 (Passive; 11 ♘d2 is considerably
 better.) 11 ... e5 12 ♖h2 ♗e7 13

♖ad1 ♗h8 14 ♖b5 ♖ad8 15 ♖d2
 ♖b7 16 ♖xd7 ♖xf3! 17 ♗xf3 e4! ♖
 Rubinstein-Euwe, London 1922.

b) 9 ... c5 when:

b1) 10 ♗e2 a6 11 a4 d5!? 12 ♖d3
 ♘e4 13 ♖c2 ♘xd2 14 ♗xd2 ♖c8 15
 ♖fe1 ♘f6 16 ♗e2 e6 17 ♘e5 ♗e7
 18 ♖g5 = Franklin-Botterill,
 London 1975.

b2) 10 ♖e1 a6 11 a4 ♗c7 12 ♖h2
 ♖c6 13 e4 e5 14 ♗e2 White has
 some initiative and eventually won;
 Franklin-Rayner, Aaronson Masters
 London 1978.

b3) Franklin has also suggested 10
 a4 'to be followed by b4 and ♗b3 -
 but obviously White's plan depends
 upon how Black continues after
 move 9. The usual plan is ... ♗c7
 and ... e5'. (But 9 ... a6 first is
 probably necessary, as in the Reti,
 to be able to answer 10 a5 by 10 ...
 b5; then 10 b4 would be interesting
 but perhaps premature - Harding.)

10 ♖h2 e5
 11 a4 a6
 12 b4 ♗e7

Black's ♗-side is more solid than
 in the previous note because ... c5
 has been avoided. Chances seem
 balanced but more tests are needed.

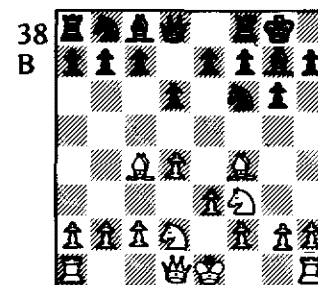
White should not imitate Bisguier-
 Korchnoi, Hastings 1975-76, which
 went on 13 ♗b3 ♖b8 14 b5 a5 15
 ♗a3 e4 16 ♘e1 ♗h8 17 ♗h1 ♖h6
 and now the deteriorating position
 was further compromised by 18 f4?
 ef (0-1, 51).

An alternative would be 12 ♗e2,
 to play a waiting game and keep a
 watch on the black a-pawn.

C13

6 ♖c4(38)

The move Franklin normally
 plays.



C131 6 ... ♘bd7

C132 6 ... ♘c6

Also:

a) 6 ... c6 7 a4 (7 0-0 ♘bd7 8 c3
 b5) 7 ... ♘bd7 8 h3 a5 9 0-0 ♘b6
 10 ♖b3 ♘bd5 11 ♖h2 b5 12 e4
 ♘b6 13 ab cb 14 ♖e1 ♖b7 15 c3
 and 16 e5 Harding-Adams, London
 League 1975.

b) 6 ... b6 7 c3 c5:

b1) 8 b4 ♘c6 9 ♗b3 a6 10 a4 ♖f5
 11 0-0 d5 12 ♖e2 ♘h5! 13 ♖g5 h6
 14 ♖h4 g5 15 ♖g3 ♘xg3 = Bisguier-
 N.Weinstein, USA Ch 1974.

b2) 8 ♗e2 (8 h3!?) 8 ... a6 9 a4
 ♘h5! 10 ♖g5 h6 11 ♖h4 cd 12 cd
 ♘c6 13 0-0 ♘b4 ♖ Bondarevsky-
 Boleslavsky, 15th USSR Ch 1947.

c) 6 ... ♘fd7 (dubious against ♖c4)
 7 h4!? is promising for White.
 According to Franklin, 7 ... ♘f6 is
 probably best, because if 7 ... e5 (7
 ... ♗e8 8 h5) then 8 ♖g5 is strong.
 If 7 ... h5 Black's position is
 weakened, and White can play c3,
 ♗b1 (threatening ♗xg6), a4, ♗a2

and also g5, building up against f7. C131

6 ... ♖bd7
7 h3 ♗e8

In conjunction with this, ... ♖c6 would have been more logical.

Here 7 ... b6 is more logical, e.g. 8 0-0 ♖b7 9 c3 reaching the position in Diagram 37 in the important line C12.

8 ♖h2

Other moves here:

a) 8 ♖b5?! ♖b7 or 8 ... ♖h5 9 ♖h2 e5 - TDH.

b) 8 d5?! ♖a5 (8 ... ♖h5 9 ♖h2 ♖xb2? 10 dc; 8 ... ♖b8!?) 9 ♖h2 ♖xc4 ♖ (two bishops) - Harding.

c) 8 0-0 e5 9 de de! (9 ... ♖xe5 below) see the illustrative game Franklin-Ree, below.

8 ... e5
9 de ♖xe5

Possibly 9 ... de is better when 10 0-0 transposes to Franklin-Ree. 10 e4 ♖h5 could be a critical line.

10 ♖xe5 de
11 0-0

Here Black has:

a) 11 ... ♖d7 see illustrative game Franklin-Butterill, below.

b) 11 ... ♗e7 (=?) 12 c3 ♗h8 13 a4 a5 14 ♗b3 ♖d7 15 ♖fd1 f5 16 ♖f1 ♖b6 17 ♗h1 ♖e6 18 ♗b5 ♖d7 19 ♗b3 ♖e6 repeating moves; Franklin-Hartston, Hastings 1971-72.

Illustrative Games:

The annotations to the following two games were kindly contributed specially by British Master Michael Franklin, the acknowledged expert

in this opening.

Franklin-Ree

England-Holland 1964

1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 ♖f4 ♖g7 4 e3 0-0 5 ♖bd2 d6 6 ♖c4 ♖bd7

This opening brings about a quiet positional struggle. It causes Black no immediate problems but for the unwary it has a nasty sting in the tail. The following two games are against players well versed in the openings but it is not long before they lose their way.

If Black wishes to play an eventual ... e5 the knight is best placed at c6, where it does not obstruct the ♗'s view. If ... ♖bd7 is played then it should be followed by ... b6, ... ♖b7 and ... c5.

7 h3 ♗e8
8 0-0 e5
9 de

When Black plays the London System (i.e. against the Reti - TDH) it is usual to consolidate the centre by 5 ... c6 instead of ... ♖bd7, 6 ... ♖e7 instead of ... ♖c5, and develop the ♗ at a6 after first playing ... a5. In this variation one maintains a pawn at d5. The exchange of the d-pawn and playing e3-e4 by White is my own idea, evolved in over-the-board play and I have had considerable success with this variation over many years.

9 ... de
10 ♖h2 ♗e7

[TDH note: Black could try 10 ... e4! with the idea 11 ♖d4 ♖e5 12 ♖b5! ♗e7! but not 12 ... ♖xc4 13 ♖xc7 ♗c6 14 ♖xc4 (intending

♖xa8) or 13 ... ♖xb2 14 ♗b1. If the black ♗ were on c6 instead of d7, then the white ♗ would have to retreat to the passive square e1 (see C132).]

11 e4 ♖h5
12 ♗e2 ♖c5

[12 ... ♖h6!? comes into consideration - TDH.]

13 ♗e3 c6

[It is still possible to prepare ... ♖h6 by means of 13 ... ♖e8, 14 ... ♗f8 - TDH.]

14 ♖fe1

This allows the ♖c4 to return home where it not only helps to defend the ♗-side but supports a ♗-side advance. It also inhibits Black's efforts to play ... f5 because of pressure on e5.

14 ... b5
15 ♖f1 ♖a4
16 b3 ♖b6
17 ♖ac1 ♖d7

Almost an admission that he has misplayed the opening.

18 c4 b4
19 c5 ♖hf6

19 ... a5 is probably a little better but 20 ♖c4 is still very strong.

20 ♖c4 ♖e8
21 ♖a5 ♖b8

22 ♖d2 f6 23 ♗xb4 ♖c7 24 ♗a3 g5 25 ♖c4 g4 26 hg ♖xg4 27 ♖d6 ♖xf3 28 ♖f5 ♗e8 29 gf ♗h5 30 b4 ♖h6 31 ♖cd1 ♗h8 32 ♖c4 ♖f4 33 ♖xf4 ef 34 ♖f1 a5 35 ♗e2 ab 36 ♗b2 [This threatens 37 ♖d8! and 38 ♗xf6+, so it is no surprise that Black succumbs to a little combination - TDH.] 36 ... ♖a3 37 ♖b3

♖b5 38 ♗xf6+ 1-0.

Franklin-Butterill

Surrey-Oxfordshire 1971

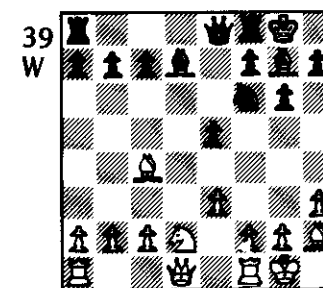
1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 ♖f4 ♖g7 4 e3 0-0 5 ♖bd2 d6 6 ♖c4 ♖bd7 7 h3 ♗e8 8 ♖h2 e5

9 de ♖xe5

Black, possibly sensing the resulting cramped position after 9 ... de, decides to offer the exchange of knights. In this variation White does not have to play e3-e4. Although the position looks fairly harmless White is able to conjure up a few threats.

10 ♖xe5 de
11 0-0 ♖d7(39)

[11 ... ♗e7 transposes to Franklin-Hartston, above. Butterill suggests 11 ... b5! or 11 ... ♖e6 = (and if 12 ♖xe5 ♖xe4 13 ♖c4 b5 ♖).]



12 ♗e2 ♗e7
13 ♖b3 ♗h8?

Black is so conditioned to playing ... f5 in the King's Indian Defence that this wasted move can almost be said to be an automatic reflex against the pin. [Better 13 ... ♖c6 = according to Butterill.]

14 Bfd1 B ad8
15 Bc4 Bc6
16 Bh4

The B-side attack with Bc4-a5 is once again causing Black problems. Note how it combines with threats on e5.

16 ... Bc5
17 a3

The idea is Bb4 to exchange queens. The resulting ending would favour White.

17 ... a5
18 Bf3 Bxd1+?

[Botterill: 18 ... Bde8 19 Bc4 Bxc4 20 Bxc4 Be4 = but I couldn't endure such a boring line!]

19 Bxd1 Bxf3

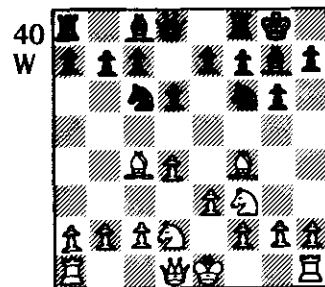
Once again Black feels obliged to give White the advantage of the two bishops. Note how Black is tied to the defence of his f-pawn due to his 13 ... Bh8?

20 gf b5
21 a4! c6
22 Ba1 e4!?

23 Bf4 (23 fe g5! is unclear, but 23 Bd1! ± - Botterill) 23 ... ef? (23 ... g5!? - Botterill) 24 Bxf3 ba 25 Bxa4 Qd5 26 Bc4 Be7 27 Bxc6 (winning) 27 ... Bb4 28 Bc7 Bg5+ 29 Bh1 f5? (A blunder due to time pressure) 30 Bxg7! Bxg7 31 Bb7+ Qf6 32 Bb6+ Bg7 33 Be5+ Bf6 34 Bc7+ 1-0.

C132
6 ... Bc6!(40)
7 c3

Probably necessary in this position, because if White allows the Franklin plan 7 h3 Be8 8 Bh2



e5 9 de Black obtains the initiative by 9 ... de! e.g. 10 e4 Bh5 (Botterill) or 10 0-0 e4 since the black Bc6 controls d4.

How is White to circumvent this difficulty? One possibility is to delay the knight development (C2). White might also look further into 7 0-0!? Be8 (7 ... Bh5!? 8 Bg5) 8 e4!? e5 9 de de 10 Be3 which is somewhat like a Classical Pirc.

7 ... Be8

Or 7 ... Qf7 8 h4 Qf6! 9 Bc2 Qh5 10 Bh2 e5 11 0-0-0 e4?! 12 Bxe4 Bf5 13 Bd5 ± Franklin-Perkins, London 1975.

8 e4

A quieter treatment is 8 0-0, e.g. 8 ... e5 9 Bg3 Be7 10 h3 Bh8 11 b4 e4 12 Qe1 Qh5 13 Bh2 f5 Franklin-Ligterink, Aaronson Masters, London 1978 - which game ended in a draw.

8 ... e5
9 de Bh5!

9 ... de allows White more scope, e.g. 10 Be3 b6 (10 ... Be7 11 h3 ±) 11 h3 Bb7 12 Bc2 Bd8 13 b4 Qh5 14 0-0 Qf4 =, and White can

probably improve on this.

10 Be3 Bxe5

11 Bxe5 Bxe5

12 0-0 Qf6 13 f3 Be7 14 Be1 c6 15 a4 Be6 16 Bb3 d5 = (½-½, 35) Franklin-Dueball, Great Britain-West Germany 1971.

C2

4 ... d6

5 h3

Other ideas:

a) 5 Bc4 0-0 6 c3 a6? (6 ... Bbd7 C131) 7 a4 Bbd7 8 0-0 Be8 9 h3 e5 10 Bh2 Be7 (Goldin-Kupreichik, USSR 1974) 11 a5! - Boleslavsky and Kapengut.

b) 5 Be2 Qh5!? 6 Bg5 h6 7 Bh4 g5 8 Qf2 (8 Bg3 Bxg3 9 hg Qd7):

b1) 8 ... Qf4 9 ef gh 10 Qf3 c5 11 c3 cd 12 Qxd4 Qc6 13 Qf3 Bb6 (½-½, 26) Spiridonov-Greffe, Slanchev Breag 1974.

b2) 8 ... gh 9 Bxh5 e5 10 de (10 c3!?) 10 ... Qc6! 11 Qc3 Bxe5 12 Be2 0-0 13 0-0-0 (13 0-0 d5) 13 ... b5! 14 f4 (14 Bxb5 Be6) 14 ... b4 15 Qd5 c6! (0-1, 33) Klamann-Gufeld, Sebastopol 1976.

5 ... 0-0(41)

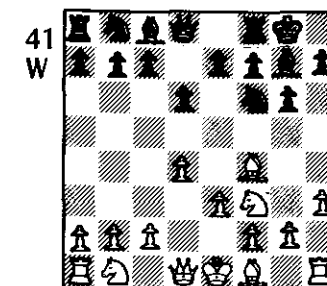
Or 5 ... Bbd7 6 Be2 (passive) 6 ... c5 7 c3 b6 8 Bbd2 Bb7 9 0-0 0-0 10 Bc2 Bc8 Naegeli-Bogoljubov, German Ch 1933.

Now, apart from 6 Bbd2 (C1) White can play:

C21 6 Be2

C22 6 c3

Janowski-Yates, New York 1924, went 6 Bc4 when, according to Alekhine, Black should transpose to the reversed Reti by 6 ... c5 7 c3 (7



dc Ba5+) 7 ... b6 and ... Bb7. Instead 6 ... Bc6 was chosen, but this left d5 weak, e.g. 7 0-0 Qd7 (7 ... e5 8 Bh2 is critical.) 8 Bc3 h6 (8 ... e5? 9 Bg5 Be8 10 Qd5 ±) 9 Qd2 e5 10 Bg3 Qh7 11 Bxd1 Qb6?! 12 Be2 Be7 13 Bfe1 ±.

C21

6 Be2 Bbd7

Also possible are:

a) 6 ... c5 7 c4?! Bb6 8 Qc3 Bxb2 9 Qb5 Bb4+ 10 Qd2 a6 11 Qc7 Ba7 12 Bg5 e6 13 Bf4 Qe4 (0-1, 51) Grigorov-Uhlmann, Leipzig 1974. 7 c3 is normal.

b) 6 ... Bc6 when:

b1) 7 Bb5 a6 8 Ba4 b5 9 Bb3?! (9 Bc2 Qd7 10 e4 e5 11 de =) 9 ... Ba5 10 Bc2 Qc4 11 b3 (11 Bc1 Bb7 12 Bbd2 e5 ±) 11 ... Bb6 12 e4 Qf7 13 0-0 (13 e5 Bb7) 13 ... e5! ± Bisguier-Gligoric, Stockholm 1962; White has a very poor form of Ruy Lopez.

b2) 7 d5?! e5! 8 dc? ef 9 cb Bxb7 10 ef Be8+ ± - Euwe.

b3) 7 Be2 Qd7 8 Bh2 e5 9 de de 10 Bbd2 Be7 11 0-0 b6 12 Bc2 Bb7 13 Bxd1 f5 (0-1, 30) Sorokin-

Polugayevsky, RSFSR Spartakiad, Leningrad 1967.

b4) 7 0-0 ♖e8 8 ♘h2 a6 (8 ... e5!?) 9 d5 ♘b8 10 c4 e5 11 ♘c3 ♘d7 12 e4 f5 13 ♘g5 ♘f6 14 f4 h6 15 fe de 16 ♘f3 f4 17 c5 with an unclear position; Ranniku-Chiburidanidze, USSR Women's Cup Final 1974.

c) 6 ... b6 7 0-0 ♘b7 and now: c1) 8 ♘bd2 ♘bd7 9 c3 e6 (9 ... c5!? see note to Black's 7th below) 10 ♘h2 ♖e7 with a very comfortable position for Black; Prameshuber-Hübner, Clare Benedict Teams, Paignton 1970.

c2) 8 c4 ♘bd7 9 ♘c3 ♖e8 10 ♖c2 e5 11 de de 12 ♘h2 with an unclear position (1-0, 60) Havin-Pogrebissky Kiev Ch 1950.

7 0-0 ♖e8

Or 7 ... b6 8 ♘bd2 c5 9 c3 ♘b7 = e.g. 10 a4 a6 11 ♘h2 ♖a7! 12 ♘e1 ♖a8 13 ♘f3 cd 14 ♘xb7 ♖xb7 15 ed (15 cd ♖c8) 15 ... ♖fa8! ♣ Trifunovic-Csom, Sombor 1972.

8 ♘h2 e5

9 ♘a3

Or 9 de de (9 ... ♘xe5!?) 10 ♘c3 ♖e7 11 ♘d2 c6 12 ♖fd1 ♘e8 13 ♘c4 ♖h8 14 e4 (½-½, 41) Yurchinska-Veroeci, Belgrade 1975.

9 ... e4

10 ♘d2 ♖e7

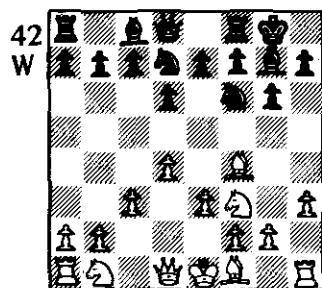
11 ♘b5 ♘e8

12 c4 f5 13 ♖c2 a6 14 ♘c3 ♘ef6 15 ♖ae1 b6 = (½-½, 57) Ritov-Polugayevsky, Tallinn 1973.

C22 6 c3 ♘bd7(42)

Or 6 ... ♖e8 7 ♘e2 ♘c6. This placing of the ♖ has less point

now that d4 is under control from the white c-pawn. Moiseyev-Petrusiak, Havirzhov 1971, continued 8 0-0 e5 9 ♘h2 ♘h5 10 ♘e1 f5 11 ♘d3 ♘f6 12 b4 a6 13 ♘d2 g5 14 a4 with White's ♖side chances looking better than Black's on the ♖side (1-0, 36).



7 ♘e2

7 ♘c4 also comes into consideration:

a) 7 ... ♖e8?? 8 ♘xf7+ ♖xf7 9 ♘g5+ ♖g8 10 ♘e6 wins the queen.

b) 7 ... ♖e8 8 0-0 e5 9 de (9 ♘h2 ♖e7 10 ♘bd2 Bisguier-Langeweg, Beverwijk 1962; 10 ... b6 = - Barden) 9 ... ♘xe5 10 ♘e2?! h6 11 ♘h2 g5! 12 ♘xe5 de 13 ♘a3 ♖e7 14 ♘c4 ♖d8 15 ♖c2 ♘d5 ♣ Podgorny-Stulik, Prague 1948.

c) 7 ... e6 8 ♘bd2 (8 0-0 ♖e7 intending ... e5 - Pachman) 8 ... ♖e7 9 e4? e5 10 de de 11 ♘e3 b6 12 ♖e2 a6 13 g4 (to forestall ... ♘h5-f4) 13 ... ♘c5 14 ♘g5 ♘b7 ♣ Vidmar-Flohr, Bled 1931.

7 ... ♖e8

8 0-0 e5

9 ♘h2 ♖e7

9 ... ♘h5 is less appropriate, e.g.

10 a4 ♖h8 11 ♘a3 f5 12 ♘b5 ♖d8 13 de de 14 g4 fg 15 hg a6 16 ♘xc7 ♖xc7 17 gh ♖c6 18 h6 ♘f6 19 c4 e4 20 ♘d4 ♖b6 21 ♖c2 ♘c5 22 a5 (1-0, 47) Moiseyev-Lepeshkin, ½-final Moscow Ch 1972.

10 a4

Here Black has tried:

a) 10 ... h5! 11 de ♖xe5 12 ♘bd2 ♘xf3+ 13 ♘xf3 ♘e4 14 a5 a6 15 ♘d2 ♘g5 16 ♘f3 ♘e6 17 ♘d4 d5 18 ♖e1 c5 (½-½, 40) Doda-Kavalek, Polanica Zdroj 1968.

b) 10 ... a5 11 ♖e1 b6 12 ♘a3 ♘b7 13 ♘b5 ♖ac8 (better 13 ... ♘e8 =) 14 b4 ed?! 15 ed ♖fe8 16 ♘c4 ♣ Hort-Pribyl, Havirzhov 1971.

The Pseudo-London System

1 d4 ♘f6

2 ♘f3 g6

3 ♘c3

The idea is to induce ... d5 so that the subsequent placing of the ♖ on f4 will be more effective. However, White does not have a very free game for his other pieces are restricted and the knight on c3 in particular is in the way of the c-pawn.

3 ... d5

If 3 ... d6 (or 3 ... ♘g7) White will transpose to the classical Pirc by 4 e4, while if 3 ... c5 4 d5 d6 5 e4 with a favourable form of Benoni.

4 ♘f4

Other tries include:

a) 4 g3 ♘g7 5 ♘g2 0-0 6 0-0 ♘bd7 7 ♘e5 ♘xe5 8 de ♘g4 9 ♘d5 c6 10 ♘f4 ♘xe5 = Lopez-Toran, Torremolinos 1961.

b) 4 ♘g5!? (compare chapters 2, B and 7, B):

b1) 4 ... ♘g7 (= ECO) 5 ♖d2 or 5 ♘xf6 ♘xf6 6 e4 - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.

b2) 4 ... ♘e4 (usually good when White has played ♘f3):

b21) 5 ♘f4 ♘xc3 6 bc c5 7 e4 de 8 ♘g5 ♖a5 9 ♘xe4 ♘g7 10 ♘d2 cd 11 cd ♖d5 12 ♖f3 ♘bd7 13 ♘eg5 (13 c3 0-0 14 ♘d3 e5) 13 ... ♖xf3 14 ♘xf3 0-0 and Black has counterplay against the c- and d-pawns; Klamann-Bronstein, 24th USSR Ch 1957.

b22) 5 ♖d3!? ♘xg5 (better 5 ... ♘f5) 6 ♘xg5 ♘h6 (6 ... e6 7 h4 or 6 ... ♘g7 7 ♖f3 0-0 8 ♖xd5 ±) 7 h4 c6 8 e4 de 9 ♘xe4 ♖a5+ 10 c3 ♣ Rakic-Marjanovic, Yugoslavia 1975.

4 ... ♘g7(43)

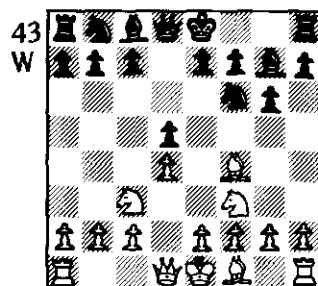
Other ideas are:

a) 4 ... ♘h5 5 ♘e5 f6 6 ♘g3 ♘xg3 7 hg ♘g7 8 e3 c6 9 ♘d3 e5? (9 ... ♖f7 was necessary) 10 ♖xh7! ♖f7 (10 ... ♖xh7 11 ♘xg6+; 10 ... e4 11 ♖xg7 ed 12 ♘h4) 11 ♘xg6+! ♖xg6 12 ♘e5+! fe 13 ♖h5+ ♖f6 14 ♖xe5+ ♖f7 15 ♖xg7+ ♖e6 16 ♖e5 mate; Palau-te Kolste, London OL 1927.

b) 4 ... c6 5 e3 (or 5 h3) 5 ... ♘g7 6 h3 ♘bd7 (possibly 6 ... 0-0 followed by ... b6 and ... ♘a6 is better.) when:

b1) 7 ♘e2 b6 8 0-0 ♘b7 9 ♘e5 (Tartakower-Wahlteuch, London 1922) 9 ... 0-0 intending ... ♘e8, ... f6.

b2) 7 ♘d3 0-0 8 0-0 ♖e8 9 ♘h2 a6 a6 = Holmov-Gipslis, 29th USSR Ch 1961.



A 5 h3

B 5 e3

Or:

a) 5 $\text{b}5$ $\text{a}6$ 6 $\text{e}3$ 0-0 7 $\text{a}2$ $\text{c}6$ 8 $\text{c}3$ $\text{b}6$ = Bisguier-Tarjan, USA Ch 1973.

b) 5 $\text{d}2$ and now:

b1) 5 ... 0-0 6 $\text{h}6$ with the following possibilities:
b11) 6 ... $\text{b}6$ 7 $\text{a}7$ $\text{g}7$ $\text{g}8$ 0-0-0 (or 8 $\text{g}3$ $\text{b}7$ = Addison-Ujtumen, Palma de Mallorca 1970) 8 ... $\text{b}7$ 9 $\text{h}4$ $\text{h}5$ 10 $\text{g}5$ $\text{b}d7$ 11 $\text{f}4$ $\text{e}6$ 12 $\text{e}3$ $\text{c}5$ is unclear; Rakic-Janosevic, Belgrade 1968.

b12) 6 ... $\text{d}4$ 7 $\text{d}e4$ $\text{d}e$ 8 $\text{a}7$ $\text{g}7$ $\text{g}9$ $\text{d}5$ 10 $\text{h}4$ (10 $\text{c}4$ $\text{a}4$ 11 $\text{d}e4$ - Buslayev in 64) 10 ... $\text{h}6$ 11 $\text{d}h3$ $\text{e}5$ 12 $\text{e}3$ $\text{d}8$ 13 $\text{c}4$ $\text{d}6$ 14 0-0-0 $\text{c}6$ 15 $\text{d}5$ $\text{d}e7$ 16 $\text{f}3$ ef (16 ... $\text{a}h3$!) 17 gf (Aleksandria-Chiburidanidze, 8th match game 1977) 17 ... $\text{a}h3$ followed by 18 ... $\text{b}5$ with an unclear position.

b2) 5 ... $\text{d}4$!? (Tukmakov later suggested 5 ... $\text{c}5$.) 6 $\text{d}e4$ $\text{d}e$ 7 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{f}6$ (7 ... $\text{a}e6$ 8 0-0-0! $\text{f}6$ 9 $\text{d}5$! fe 10 de $\pm$) 8 $\text{d}c4$ $\text{a}e6$ 9 $\text{e}3$ 0-0 10 $\text{d}a5$ (10 0-0-0!? - Tukmakov) 10 ... $\text{b}6$ 11 $\text{d}c4$ $\text{a}c8$! 12 $\text{a}xe6$ $\text{a}xe6$ 13

$\text{d}b3$ $\text{c}6$ 14 0-0 $\text{d}d7$ 15 $\text{f}d1$ (15 $\text{f}d1$!?) 15 ... $\text{f}5$! (instead of 15 ... $\text{f}d8$? 16 $\text{d}5$! $\text{a}xd5$ 17 $\text{a}e2$! $\pm$ Gurgendze-Tukmakov, USSR 1977) 16 $\text{d}5$ cd 17 $\text{a}xd5$ $\text{a}xd5$ 18 $\text{a}xd5$ $\text{d}f6$ = - Tukmakov, *Informator* 24.

A

5 h3 0-0

5 ... $\text{d}4$ is interesting. Tsvetkov quotes a game that continued 6 $\text{e}3$ $\text{dxc}3$ 7 bc $\text{c}5$ 8 $\text{a}e5$ $\text{f}6$ 9 $\text{a}g3$ $\text{a}5$ 10 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{c}4$ 11 $\text{a}e2$ $\text{d}d7$ 12 0-0 $\text{d}b6$ with complicated play.

6 e3 c5
7 dc

Alekhine wrote: 'At first blush this makes a strange impression, but it is based on a profound conception of the position. White may permit his only pawn to disappear from the centre, inasmuch as he commands it sufficiently with his pieces.'

Others are not so good:

a) 7 $\text{a}2$ $\text{d}b7$ and now:

a1) 8 dc $\text{a}5$ 9 0-0 $\text{a}xc5$ 10 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{b}b6$ 11 $\text{d}b3$ $\text{a}f5$ 12 $\text{a}f3$ $\text{f}d8$ = Balshan-Shamkovich, Netanya 1975.

a2) 8 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{e}6$ 9 0-0 $\text{d}xe5$ 10 $\text{a}xe5$ $\text{b}6$ 11 $\text{a}4$ $\text{b}7$ 12 $\text{a}5$ $\text{d}c6$ 13 $\text{d}a4$ (Neikirkh and Tsvetkov also give 13 $\text{d}b5$ $\text{d}d7$ 14 $\text{a}e2$ $\text{c}4$! = and 13 $\text{d}b5$! $\text{d}e4$! 14 $\text{a}h2$ $\text{d}d7$.) 13 ... $\text{c}4$ 14 $\text{a}e1$ $\text{f}e8$ 15 $\text{b}3$ $\text{a}xa4$ 16 $\text{f}xa4$ $\text{b}5$! 17 $\text{f}a1$ $\text{a}6$ 18 bc (If 18 $\text{a}f3$ cb ! 19 cb $\text{f}c8$, but 18 $\text{b}4$! $\text{d}d7$ is critical.) 18 ... dc ! 19 $\text{a}f3$ $\text{d}d5$ 20 $\text{a}xg7$ $\text{g}xg7$ 21 $\text{e}4$ $\text{d}e7$ 22 $\text{a}c3$ + $\text{g}g8$ 23 $\text{f}d1$ $\text{f}ab8$ 24 $\text{h}4$ $\text{a}c7$! 25 $\text{h}5$ $\text{b}4$ 26 $\text{a}e3$ $\text{e}5$ 27 $\text{a}g5$ $\text{d}c6$! $\mp$

Bondarevsky-Smyslov, Moscow Ch 1947.

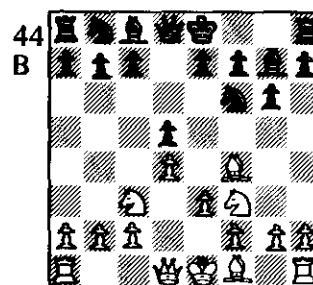
b) 7 $\text{d}b5$ $\text{d}c6$ 8 $\text{c}3$ $\text{a}6$ 9 $\text{d}a3$ $\text{c}4$ 10 $\text{a}e3$ $\text{b}5$ 11 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{b}7$ 12 $\text{a}f3$ $\text{d}e4$ $\mp$ Prins-Czerniak, Beverwijk 1955 (0-1, 46).

7 ... $\text{a}5$
8 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{a}xc5$

9 $\text{d}b3$ $\text{b}b6$ 10 $\text{a}e5$ 'leading up to an exchange of pieces by which the black squares in the opposing position are considerably weakened, a circumstance which will turn out to be the determining factor in the approaching ending. This is Capablanca!' wrote his great rival. Capablanca-Yates, New York 1924, continued 10 ... $\text{e}6$ 11 $\text{d}b5$ $\text{d}e8$ 12 $\text{a}xg7$ $\text{d}xg7$ 13 $\text{h}4$! $\text{a}6$ 14 $\text{d}c3$ $\text{d}c6$ 15 $\text{d}d3$ $\pm$ (1-0, 77).

B

5 e3(44)



5 ... 0-0

5 ... $\text{a}f5$ might be met by 6 $\text{d}d3$ (Alekhine) though this was not played in:

a) Marshall-Ed. Lasker, New York 1924; which went 6 $\text{h}3$ 0-0 7 $\text{d}d3$ $\text{d}e4$ 8 $\text{a}xe4$ $\text{a}xe4$ 9 0-0 $\text{d}d7$ 10 $\text{d}d2$ $\pm$.

b) Nor in Suetin-Borisenko, 21st USSR Ch 1954; 6 $\text{a}e2$ $\text{c}6$ 7 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{d}f7$ =.

6 $\text{a}e2$

Alternatives:

a) 6 $\text{d}b5$ (6 $\text{h}3$ see A) 6 ... $\text{d}a6$ 7 $\text{a}e2$ $\text{a}g4$ 8 $\text{d}c3$ $\text{d}b8$ 9 $\text{h}3$ $\text{a}f5$ 10 $\text{g}4$ $\text{a}c8$ 11 $\text{g}5$ $\text{d}e8$ 12 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{c}6$ 13 0-0-0 $\text{d}d6$ 14 $\text{d}d3$ $\pm$ (1-0, 40) Bogoljubow-Rellstab, Aachen 1933.

b) Alekhine recommended 6 $\text{d}d3$. Practical examples:

b1) 6 ... $\text{c}6$ 7 $\text{h}3$ $\text{d}b7$ 8 0-0 $\text{f}e8$ 9 $\text{a}h2$ $\text{a}6$ 10 $\text{b}4$ $\text{d}h5$ 11 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{d}xe5$ 12 de $\text{f}6$ 13 $\text{g}4$ fe 14 gh $\text{e}4$ 15 $\text{d}xe4$ unclear; Holmov-Gipslis, 29th USSR Ch 1961.

b2) 6 ... $\text{c}5$ when:

b21) 7 $\text{h}3$ $\text{b}b6$ 8 0-0 $\text{c}4$ 9 $\text{a}e2$ $\text{a}xb2$ 10 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{b}b4$ 11 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{e}6$ 12 $\text{e}4$ $\text{d}c6$ 13 $\text{f}ab1$:

b211) 13 ... $\text{a}e7$ 14 $\text{a}f3$ is unclear; Bondarevsky-Bronstein, Parnu 1947. b212) 13 ... $\text{a}5$ 14 $\text{d}xc6$ bc 15 $\text{d}xd5$ $\text{a}xd2$ 16 $\text{d}xf6$ + $\text{a}xf6$ 17 $\text{a}xd2$ $\text{a}xd4$ 18 $\text{d}c4$ $\pm$ - ECO.

b22) 7 0-0 $\text{d}c6$ (7 ... $\text{a}g4$ 8 $\text{h}3$ $\text{a}xf3$ 9 $\text{a}xf3$ $\text{d}c6$ $\mp$ ECO) 8 dc (8 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{d}h5$ 9 $\text{d}xc6$ bc 10 $\text{a}g5$ $\text{h}6$ $\mp$ Radojevic-Daskalov, Sombor 1964) 8 ... $\text{a}5$ 9 $\text{d}d4$ $\text{a}xc5$ 10 $\text{d}xc6$ bc 11 $\text{a}e5$ $\text{b}b4$ 12 $\text{f}ab1$ $\text{d}g4$ 13 $\text{a}3$ $\text{b}b6$ 14 $\text{a}xg7$ $\text{a}c7$ 15 $\text{g}3$ $\text{g}xg7$ 16 $\text{e}4$ $\text{f}d8$ 17 ed cd 18 $\text{a}e2$ $\text{d}f6$ and Black stood well; Golombek-Vaitonis, Stockholm 1952.

6 ... $\text{b}6$!?

Others:

a) 6 ... $\text{d}h5$! 7 $\text{a}g5$ $\text{h}6$ 8 $\text{a}h4$ $\text{g}5$ 9 $\text{a}g3$? $\text{d}c6$ 10 $\text{d}e5$ $\text{d}xg3$ 11 $\text{d}xc6$ bc 12 hg $\text{d}d6$ 13 $\text{d}a4$ $\text{e}5$ $\mp$

Bondarevsky-Liberzon, Rostov 1960. Black's control of the central squares was the critical factor. But why not 9 d5!

b) 6 ... a6 7 0-0 b6 8 d5 b7 9 f3 e6 (Maher-Olafsson, Moscow 1956) 10 e2 followed by e3-e4 = - Olafsson.

c) 6 ... c6 7 0-0 f5 8 d5 f7 9 g4 e6 10 d3 c5 11 b5 a6 12 g3 f6! = Suetin-Borisenko, 21st USSR Ch 1954.

d) 6 ... c5 when:

d1) 7 d4? a5 8 0-0 e5 9 d2 d6 10 b3 e6 11 dxd5 dxd5 12 e5 dxb2 13 eab1 e6 = G.Harris-Ivkov, Bognor Regis 1958.
d2) 7 0-0 cd 8 ed d6 9 d5 d7 10 dxc6 bc 11 a4 a5 12 c3 a6 13 a6 e6 14 e1 e8 15 e3 e7 16 e2 ½:½ Kottnauer-Boleslavsky, Helsinki 1952.

d3) 7 d5 cd 8 ed d6 9 0-0 e6 10 dxc6 bc 11 a4 e5 12 c3 d7 13 b4 e8 14 g5 f6 15 e4 d6 16 d5 g5 17 g3 e5 18 a4 e7 19 de fe 20 ffe1 d7 21 dxd7 dxd7 22 c4 (1-0, 48) Antoshin-Balashov, Moscow 1967.

7 d5

Or 7 0-0 d5?! (7 ... b7; 7 ... c6!?) 8 g5 h6 9 e4 g5 10 d5 gh 11 e5 e6 (11 ... e6 - Antoshin)

12 f4 e5 13 de e7 14 e3 f5 15 ead1 c6 16 e3 f7 17 f3 a6 18 e4! e6 19 ef ef 20 d4! e7 21 f6+ e7 22 e4 e5+ 23 f2 ead8 24 e3 e5 25 e2 e1+ 26 f1 e8 27 e5+ e4 28 g3+ g4 29 e6+ 1-0 Antoshin-H.Olafsson, Reykjavik 1976.

7 ... a6
8 c4 b7

Here White has tried:

a) 9 e1 c6 10 d3 c5 11 0-0 cd 12 dxd4 d5 13 d6 d5 dc 14 e4 dfe4 15 e2 e5 16 g3 a6 17 ffd1 e7 18 d4 d4 19 d3 dxc3 20 e3 ½:½ Harding-Sugden, Athenaeum-Cambridge University 1976.

b) 9 e5 dc (best?) 10 e4 c5 11 0-0 cd 12 fxd4 d5 13 e1 a6 14 d7 e8 15 b4 ± Holmov-Gligoric, USSR-Yugoslavia 1962.

Conclusion

The London and Pseudo-London systems are useful weapons for thwarting the intentions of King's Indian and Grünfeld Defence players - especially if White is happy with f3 lines against the Pirc.

7 Miscellaneous after 2 f3

This chapter is concerned with various plans by Black after:

A 1 d4 d5 2 f3

B 1 d4 f6 2 f3

These are chiefly those lines in which Black plays an early ... c5 or in which he develops his queen's bishop at either f5 or g4.

A
1 d4 d5
2 f3

A1 2 ... f6

A2 2 ... g4

A3 2 ... f5

A4 2 ... d6

A5 2 ... c5

If in doubt, consult the index - p. 102.

A1
2 ... f6
Remaining lines only.
3 e3

Now we consider:

A11 3 ... g4

A12 3 ... f5

A13 3 ... c6

3 ... e6 and 3 ... c5 have largely been considered in the chapters on the Colle. However, it is worth

noting this form of delayed ... g4: 3 ... c5 and now:

a) 4 c3 d6 5 d3 g4 6 h3 (6 d6 d2 e5 7 de dxe5 8 b5+ d7 9 dxd7+ dxd7 10 0-0 e7 11 e1 0-0 - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 6 ... f3 7 e3 c4 8 e2 e5 9 de dxe5 10 a4+ (better 10 d1 intending d1-d2-f3 =) 10 ... e7! 11 d1 d3+ 12 e2 d4 13 e4 f5 14 e2 d5 15 f4 f7 16 e4 de 17 d4 e4 18 cd e6 ± Araiza-Alekhine, Pasadena 1932.

b) 4 d6 d6 5 a3?! g4 6 dc e5 7 h3 f3 8 gf e5 9 b4 dxb4 10 e1 d6 11 e3 e7 eab8 12 e3 b8+ dxb8 13 c4 e5 14 e3 0-0 15 cd d6 16 e4 e8 17 e2 f8 18 0-0 e7 19 ffd1 d6 with a promising position for Black; Dus-Hotimirski v. Bivshev, ½-final 17th USSR Ch 1949.

A11
3 ... g4
4 c4! e6

Here 4 ... dc transposes to the Queen's Gambit Accepted (D25 in ECO). As White has no advantageous way of avoiding this (though 4 e2

or 4 d3 are of course playable) we give here the main line: 5 dxc4 e6 6 h3 d5 7 d3 d6 7 (7 ... a6 is also $\pm$; 7 ... d6!? 8 d5 d6 9 e4 d7 10 d3 0-0 11 e5 d7 12 d2 d6!? - Kotov) 8 e4 (The quieter 8 0-0 is also $\pm$). 8 ... d6 9 d3 (or 9 d3 $\pm$) 9 ... dxf3 (9 ... d7 10 d3 $\pm$) 10 gf c5 11 d5 d4 12 d5+ d7 13 d2 d7 14 d1 d5 15 d7 d7 16 d7+ d8 (16 ... d7? 17 d5+ $\pm$) 17 f4 d7 18 d4 d5 19 fg d7 20 d3 $\pm$ Kozma-Smejkal, Czech Ch 1964.

Alternatively, 4 ... dxf3 5 dxf3 e6 6 d3 when:

a) 6 ... d7 7 d3 0-0 8 0-0 c6 9 d1 d7 10 e4 de 11 dxe4 d8 12 d2 d8 13 d3 $\pm$ Colle-Fairhurst, London 1927.

b) 6 ... c6 is another sort of Queen's Gambit (Orthodox Defence) in which his bugbear, the queen's bishop, has been exchanged off.

However, White has a free game with the two bishops. Bukhman-Chernikov, 1/2-final Leningrad Ch 1967, continued 7 d3 d6 8 g4!? h6 9 d2 a6 10 d1 b5 11 cd 12 a3 d6 13 b3 d8 14 h4 g5 15 hg hg 16 d2 d6 17 d1 d1 d1 18 d1!? d4 19 d5 d6 20 d5 d2 21 d5 ed (21 ... d5 is better, though White has the bishop pair for the ending.) 22 d5+ d7 23 d5 d2 24 d1 d1 d8 25 d8 d6 26 d4 d6 27 d6! 1-0.

5 d3

5 d2 and 5 d3 are also playable.

5 ... d8

6 d2

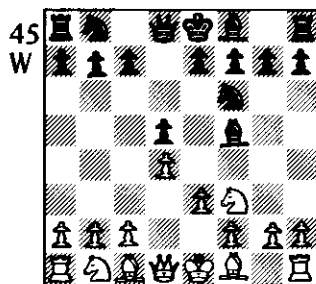
6 d5 d5 7 d3 c6 holds Black's vital d5 square, but after 8 d2 (with a threat of g4) White's game is preferable. Instead of 8 d2, White could also follow Colle-P. Johner, Berlin 1926: 8 cd ed 9 d2 d6 10 d1 $\pm$.

After 6 d2 Prins-Spielmann, Zandvoort 1936, continued 6 ... d6 7 d4 (still 7 d3) 7 ... 0-0 8 d2 d6 9 d6 (9 d3, though an admission of error, is better.) 9 ... cd 10 d3 dc 11 dxc4 (to avoid ... d5) 11 ... dxf3 12 gf d5 13 d2 e5! 14 de dxe5 15 f4 dxd3+ 16 dxd3 d8 17 d3 d4 18 d2 d2 19 d4 d4! $\mp$ (0-1, 67); White's pawn structure is a mess; his king is homeless.

A12

3 ... d5(45)

This was an idea of Alekhine's to prevent the Colle. In effect Black plays a London system a tempo down.



4 d3

This is usual. Others:

a) 4 c4 is sharpest. After 4 ... c6 (4

... e6!? see A3) White can either:

a1) Transpose to the Exchange Slav by 5 cd cd 6 d3, or

a2) Continue 5 d3 e6 6 d3 d3 7 dxd3 d6 7 0-0 when:

a21) Colle-Euwe, Hastings 1923-4, went 8 ... d6 9 e4 de 10 dxe4 dxe4 11 dxe4 0-0 12 d5 d7 13 d2 d8 14 d3 d7 15 d1 d8 16 dfe1 d8 17 h4 d6 18 d2 d6 19 d1 d6 20 d4 d7 21 d5 cd 22 cd ed 23 dxd5 d6 24 d5 dxe4 25 d6+ 1-0.

a22) 8 ... d4 9 d2 (d 10 dxd5) 9 ... d5 10 b4 d7 11 e4 dc 12 dxc4 e5 13 d3 0-0 14 d1 ed 15 dxd4 d8 16 h3 d8 17 d3 h6 18 d4 d5 19 d5 d8 20 f4 dxd4+ (20 ... dxf4 21 dxf6 gf 22 d3 $\pm$) 21 dxd4 $\pm$ (1/2-1/2, 41) Franklin-Unzicker, Hastings 1971-72.

b) 4 d5!? e6 (4 ... d6!? = ECO) 5 g4!? is probably an over-reaction as White's d-side was the weaker after 5 ... d4 6 f3 d6 7 h4 h5 8 dxd6 fg 9 d3 d7 10 g5 d7 11 c3 d6. Liberman-Petukhin, Habarovsk 1967, continued 12 e4 c5 13 e5 d7 14 d2 d8 15 c4 d6 16 cd ed 17 d3 dxd4 18 d4+ d8 (heading for the safety of h7!) 19 0-0 (a home with a leaky roof) 19 ... d6 and Black won in 41 moves. A deceptive variation. ECO gives $\pm$ after 12 e4 and they may be right.

4 ... e6

Other ideas are:

a) 4 ... d6 (Colle-Tartakower, Bled 1930) 5 d2!? e6 6 d2 (intending

e4) $\pm$ - ECO.

b) 4 ... d4? 5 d4 e6 6 dxf5 ef 7 c4 c6 8 cd d5 9 0-0 d4 10 f3 d6 11 d3 $\pm$ Bocharov-Guryanov, Bulgaria 1955.

c) 4 ... d3?! 5 d3 (or 5 cd $\pm$ Colle-Bogoljubow, San Remo 1930) and now:

c1) 5 ... c6 6 d2 e6 7 0-0 d6 8 e4 de 9 dxe4 dxe4 10 dxe4 d7!? $\pm$ - ECO.

c2) 5 ... d6 6 d2 e6 7 e4 de 8 dxe4 dxe4 (8 ... d7 is better.) 9 dxe4 d6 (Consistent, but 9 ... d8 was better.) 10 dxb7! 0-0 11 0-0 d8 12 d4 d5 13 c4 d6 14 d2 d5 15 h3 d8 16 dfe1 c5 17 dc d8 18 d5 d6 19 b4 d5 20 d4 d7 21 d5 d2+ 22 d1 d5 23 dxe5 dxe5 24 d1 d1+ 25 d2 d2 26 d3 d3 27 d3 1-0 Sultan-Khan v. Milner-Barry, British Ch 1931.

5 dxf5 ef

6 d3

Colle-Alekhine, San Remo 1930, went instead 6 0-0 d6 7 c4 dc 8 d4 d6 9 d2 0-0 10 dxc4 d6 11 dxb6 ab 12 d2 d7 with a free game for Black.

6 ... d8

7 c4

Alternatives:

a) 7 b3 d6 8 0-0 d7 9 c4 (or 9 d3 d3 10 d3 0-0 11 c4 c6 12 d5 d6 13 d1 d8 = Neikirch and Tsvetkov) 9 ... 0-0 10 d3 c6 11 d2 d4 12 d1 d8 = Alekhine-Euwe, 2nd match game 1935.

b) 7 0-0 when:

b1) 7 ... d7 8 b3 0-0 9 c4 c6 10 d3 d6 - Tartakower and du Mont.

b2) 7 ... d6 8 b3 0-0 9 c4 c6 10 d3 b6 11 d2 g6 12 cd dxd5 13 dxd5 cd 14 f3c1 d6 15 d3c3 d8 16 d5 d7 17 b4 (Alekhine-Kostic, Bled 1931) 17 ... b5!? =.

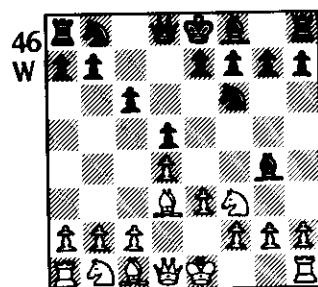
7 ... d6
8 a3 d6
9 cd dxd5

10 d3 d4 11 d5 a6 12 dxb7 d8 13 dxa6 d6 14 d8+ d8 15 d4 d3+ 16 d1 d7 17 d2 dxc1 18 dxc1 d6 19 b4 0-0 20 d4 and White won; Sultan Khan v. Milner-Barry, London 1932. Black's play was far too optimistic.

A13

3 ... c6
4 d3 d4(46)

An idea of Alekhine's to improve A11. White might evade it by 4 d2! and if 4 ... d4 then 5 c4! as suggested by Koltanowski.



5 d2

According to Koltanowski, 5 c4 would still be slightly better despite the tempo loss if Black plays 5 ... dc. 5 h3 d5 would probably

transpose to the next note; here 5 ... dxf3 6 dxf3 d7 7 d3 g6 8 c4 d7 9 d3 dc 10 dxc4 e5 11 0-0 0-0 12 d1 ed 13 ed d6 14 d3 d7 15 d3 d3 ± Nikolayevsky-Gurevich, Ukraine Ch 1967. White's two bishops were more important than the potential weakness of the isolated d-pawn.

5 ... d7
6 c4

Alternatively:

a) 6 h3 d5 7 c4 e6 8 0-0 d6 9 d1 0-0 10 e4 de 11 dxe4 dxe4 12 dxe4 d6 led to an early draw in Kolarov-Filchev, Bulgarian Ch 1955.

b) 6 e4!? de 7 dxe4 dxe4 8 dxe4 d6 9 d3 comes into consideration - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.

6 ... e6

Or:

a) 6 ... dc 7 dxc4 d7 8 0-0 dxf3 9 dxf3 e5 10 de dxe5 11 d3 d7 12 d5! ± - Koltanowski.

b) 6 ... e5!? 7 cd dxd5 (7 ... cd 8 de dxe5 9 d5+ d7 10 dxd7+ gives Black a weak d-pawn - Koltanowski.) 8 h3 (8 0-0 ed 9 ed d7 10 d4 d7f6 11 dce5 d5 12 a3 0-0 13 d5 d7 14 d2 d8 = - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 8 ... dxf3 (8 ... d5 9 g4 with an active game for White - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 9 dxf3 ed 10 dxd4 d4+ 11 d2 d5 (or 11 ... d5 12 d2) 12 0-0! dxd2 13 d3 = - Koltanowski.

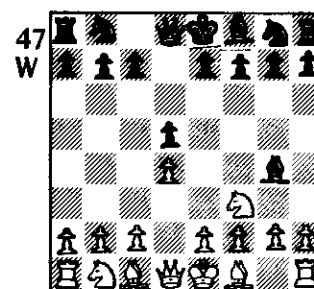
7 a3 d7
8 d2 d5
9 b4

Black is becoming cramped (9 ...

a5 10 b5). Koltanowski-Cherta, Sitges 1934, continued 9 ... d8 10 d5 d6 11 f4 d4 12 d4g4 d4g4 13 0-0 d4?! (better 13 ... a5 and 14 ... 0-0) 14 e4! de 15 dxe4 d7 (better 15 ... d8) 16 d3 0-0 17 d1 d6 18 d2 d6 19 d5 and White soon attacked with f4-f5.

A2

2 ... d4(47)



3 c4!

3 d5 is a natural reaction, but not so strong. Then:

a) 3 ... d5 4 c4 f6 5 d3 e6 6 d3 b6 7 d3 c6 8 a4 d6 9 cd ed 10 e4 de 11 dxa6 ef 12 0-0 ± Lasker-Schiffers, Nuremburg 1896.

b) 3 ... d5 is critical:

b1) 4 g3 d7 5 d3 (better 5 d2 dxe5 6 de e6 7 c4 ± Dobosz, Chess Player 7) 5 ... e6 6 d2 d7f6 7 0-0 d7 8 d4 0-0 9 dxd6? (better 9 d2 intending c4 ± - Dobosz) 9 ... cd 10 d4 d6 11 d4g6 hg ± (0-1, 36) Praszak-Dobosz, Lublin 1974.

b2) 4 g4!? d6 5 h4 (5 d4g6 hg 6 d2 e6 = - Dobosz) 5 ... e6! London-St Petersburg, 1886-87 (0-1, 40).

b3) 4 d3 d8 5 c4 f6 6 d3 e6 7 d3 d6 8 d1 c6 9 e3 d6 10 d2 d7 11 d1 d7 12 d4 ± Steinitz-Chigorin, 2nd match game 1889.

b4) 4 c4!? dc 5 d4+ c6 6 dxc4 d7 7 dxd7 dxd7 8 d3 d8 9 d3 (9 e3? e5) 9 ... d6 10 e3 e5! 11 de d4 12 f3 d5 13 d2 d6 14 d2 d5 15 0-0 d6 16 e4 f5! ± Schlechter-Charousek, Nuremburg 1896.

3 ... dxf3!?

A Koltanowski simultaneous game went instead 3 ... e6 4 d3 b6 5 d5 d6 6 e3 d7 (If 6 ... d6? 7 cd dxe5? then 8 de dxd5 9 d4+ wins the d4!) 7 cd ed (7 ... dxd5 8 d5+ c6 9 dxc6 a6 10 dxe7+ dxb5 11 dxb5 ab 12 d8) 8 d5+ d7 9 dxd7 dxd7 10 d6 and White won.

Black can transpose to the Chigorin variation of the Queen's Gambit by 3 ... d6 (instead of 3 ... e6 or 3 ... dxf3) as in the 10th game of the 1889 match: 4 e3 (best) 4 ... e5!? (or 4 ... e6 5 d3 d4 6 d3 ± Pillsbury-Chigorin, St. Petersburg 1895-96) 5 d3 dxf3 (5 ... d4+ 6 d2 dxd2+ 7 dxd2 ed 8 cd de 9 fe dce7 10 e4 ± ECO) 6 gf ed 7 cd d5 (7 ... d4 8 e4 ±) 8 ed d7 9 d3 d7+ 10 d3 d4 11 d2 d6 12 d5 d8 13 0-0-0 a6 14 d4 d7 15 d8g1 g6 16 d6 ± (1-0, 27) Steinitz-Chigorin.

4 gf

4 ef, intending f3-f4, also comes into consideration according to Koltanowski. The text can be

followed up by e4 or (better) e3, d2 and 0-0 when White has the two bishops and targets in Black's weak side, he said.

The line occurred twice in the Steinitz-Chigorin world championship match of 1889:

a) 4 ... e6 5 cd dxd5 (5 ... ed 6 b3 ± Euwe) 6 e4 d4+ 7 d3 a5? (better 7 ... h5) 8 d2 d6 9 d5! ± (4th game).

b) 4 ... dc 5 e4?! (5 e3 ± ECO) 5 ... e5! 6 de dxd1+ 7 dxd1 d6 8 f4 d8+ 9 d2 d5 10 d3 g1 d7! ± (6th game).

A3 2 ... d5

Koltanowski described this move as 'premature' while Botvinnik wrote that it 'had the advantage that it is comparatively rarely played', implying that there is little else to recommend it. However, the defence is not so easy to deal with in practice. Minev devoted an article to this (and the allied line 1 d4 d5 2 c4 d5) in *Shakhmatny Bulletin* 2/1977.

Once again White has no move as good as:

3 c4! e6

Alternatively:

a) 3 ... dc? 4 a4+ regains the pawn with central control.

b) 3 ... d6? 4 cd dxd5 5 d3 and 6 e4 - Koltanowski.

c) 3 ... c6 4 cd cd (4 ... dxd5?! 5 d3) 5 b3 b8 6 d4 (not 6 e3?? dxc1+) is a sort of Exchange Slav. White follows up with d3 and d1 and has some initiative.

d) 3 ... d6 4 b3! d6 5 d3 (5 bxb7? d7! 6 d3 b8 7 a6 d4 Minev) 5 ... e5?! (5 ... e6 below) 6 cd d4? (or 6 ... dxd4 7 dxd4 ed 8 a4+ c6 9 dxd4 ± Levenfish) 7 e4! dxe4 8 d5+ c6 9 cd bc 10 dxe5! d6 11 dxc6 b6 12 dxb4 bxb5 13 dxe6 fe 14 dxb5 dxb4+ 15 e2 ± Belavenets-Lisitsin, 10th USSR Ch 1937.

4 b3

Also:

a) 4 cd?! ed 5 b3 d6 6 d5 (6 bxb7 d4! or 6 d2 b8 7 d3 d6 - Botvinnik) 6 ... d7 7 dxe7 dxe7 8 e3 (8 bxb7 b8) 8 ... d6 9 dbd2 (9 d3 d4 10 d1 d3) 9 ... 0-0 10 d1 a5! 11 a3 f8 12 d3 a4 13 d2 d3 14 dxd3 d8 15 0-0 d6 16 d3 (Botvinnik-Keres, World Ch 1948) 16 ... b6 ±.

b) 4 d3 and now:

b1) 4 ... d6 5 cd ed 6 a3 d6 7 d5 d7 8 e3 d4 9 dxe7 dxe7 10 d3 0-0 11 0-0 d8 12 e2 dxc3 = (½:½, 40) Hohler-Korchnoi, European Teams Ch, Bath 1973.

b2) 4 ... d6 5 b3! d6 6 bxb7?! (6 c5 ± Minev) 6 ... d4 7 d5 d4 8 dxc7+ (8 e4 b8! ±) 8 ... dxc7! 9 dxa8+ (9 dxc7? d2+ mating) 9 ... d7 10 d5+ dxe5?! (better 10 ... d5 - Radulov) 11 de d2+ (11 ... d3+?! - Minev) 12 d1 dxa1 13 d3 d2 14 dxa7 Learner-West, USA 1974.

b3) 4 ... c6 5 b3 b6 6 c5 bxb3 7 ab d6 8 d4 f6 9 e3 d4 10 d2 e5 = Rashkovsky-Belyavsky, USSR 1st League 1977.

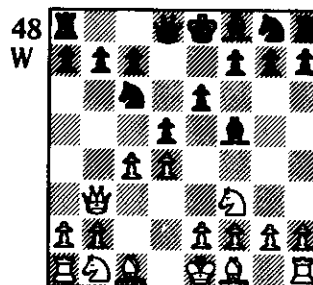
c) 4 e3 d6 5 b3 d6 when:

c1) 6 bxb7 d4 7 d3 b8 8 bxa7 d8 9 bxb7 dxa3!? (9 ... b8 draws.) 10 ba d2+ is unclear - Euwe.

c2) 6 c5 d8 (6 ... b8 7 d5 ±) see A32, note b2 to Black's 5th.

c3) 6 d2!? b8 7 d2 (followed by 0-0) with complications in store; Kapelius-Dzindzhikhasvili, USSR 1969.

4 ... d6(48)



A31 5 d2

A32 5 c5

If 5 d5!? d4+ (or 5 ... d8!?) 6 d3 dc 7 dxc4 d5 - Minev. This needs tests.

Not 5 bxb7? d4! and, as in note c1 above, Black has at least a draw.

A31

5 d2 b8

5 ... dc?! was shown to be risky in the 8th Botvinnik-Smyslov match game of 1954: 6 bxb7 d7 (6 ... d4 is somewhat better, e.g. 7 d3 b8 8 a6 d4 9 a4+ d6 10 d1 ±.) 7 b5! b8 8 a4 dxb2 9 d3 d7 (9 ... d2!? should be analysed, e.g. 10 d2 e5 or 10

dxd2 dxd4 11 d1 c3 12 ddc4 d5.) 10 dxc4 b8 11 e3 (±) 11 ... d4 (11 ... d5 12 a3! ±) 12 dxd7+ dxd7 13 dxb4 dxb4 14 dce5+ d8 15 d3 f6 16 dxf5 and now 16 ... e! (Botvinnik) should have been played.

6 e3 a6?!

Black's plan of ... dc and ... b5 subsequently fails to materialise. So he should play the more straightforward 6 ... d6 7 d3 d7 which might equalise.

7 d3 dxd3

8 dxd3 d4

9 dxb4 dxb4+ 10 dbd2 d6 11 0-0 0-0 12 c5 dxd2 13 dxd2 c6 14 f4 (freezing the centre ready for side action) 14 ... d7 15 b4 f5?! (15 ... f6 and later ... e5 was the only hope of counterplay.) 16 a4 d7 17 f8 18 b5 f8 19 d3 ab (19 ... d8 might be better.) 20 ab d8 21 b6! dxa1 22 dxa1 h6 23 d7! ± Petrov-Grau, Buenos Aires 1939. White can prepare a breakthrough with an eventual dxb7 or dxc6. He won in 36 moves.

A32

5 c5 b8(49)

Also critical:

a) 5 ... d7 6 e3 f6 7 d3 b8 d a4 a6 9 b4 g5 10 b3 (10 b5!? Minev) 10 ... d7 11 h4 g4 12 d2 d6 13 d2 e5 = O'Kelly-Kostic, Bled 1950.

b) 5 ... d8 and now:

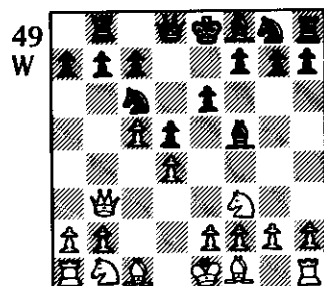
b1) 6 d4 d6 7 d3 d7 8 e3 ± Euwe-Kmoch, Amsterdam 1933.

b2) 6 e3 d6 7 d5 d7 when:

b21) 8 0-0 d7 9 a4 c6 10 b4 c6 11 e2 ± van den Bosch-Euwe, Amsterdam 1935.

b22) 8 dxc6 bc 9 0-0 g6! ± Colle-Nimzowitsch, Frankfurt 1930.

b23) 8 a4 e7 9 dxc6 bc 10 dxc6 0-0 11 0-0 b8 12 a4 (if 12 c3 b4 with good compensation) 12 ... d3 13 e1 e5 14 c3 c6 15 e4 de 16 dxe4 ed 17 dxd4 dxe4 18 dxe4 dxc5 (Gulko-Dorfman, 45th USSR Ch play-off 1978) and now 19 c2! or 19 d5 d6 20 c2 ± - Moiseyev and Shekhtman in 64.



6 d3

Koltanowski recommended 6 d4 followed by d3, e3 and d1-e2 or d5 (according to circumstances); the pawn at c5 is a thorn in Black's side.

An example is Flohr-Terpugov, 19th USSR Ch 1951: 6 d4 d7 7 c3 a6 8 e3 d6 9 d3 e7 10 d1 c7 11 d3 dxd3 12 dxd3 0-0 13 0-0 f5 14 f1 ±.

6 ... e5!?

Or 6 ... d7 7 d4 ± Fine-Grau, Stockholm 1937.

7 e4!?

Or perhaps 7 dxe5!? Minev analysed 7 dxd5 dxd5 8 dxd5 ed 9 dxc7+ d7 =.

7 ... ed
8 ef dc
9 d5 dxc5
10 0-0 ±

Here Black has:

a) 10 ... d7 11 dxc6+ bc 12 dxc3 d6 13 d7 ± - Portisch.
b) 10 ... d6 11 dxc3 d6 12 d4! dxf4 13 dxc5 d6 14 dfe1 d4 15 dxd6 cd 16 d1 ± Portisch-Keres, Wijk aan Zee 1969.

A4

2 ... d6

Now 3 c4 d4 transposes to the Queen's Gambit, Chigorin Defence. A full treatment of the variation is not possible here, but one example has been given above in A2. White has also tried 3 e3 d4 4 d2 (= ECO) 4 ... d6 5 d2 d6 (better 5 ... e6 - Lisitsin) 6 b3 e5 7 de dxe5 8 d2 dxf3+ 9 dxf3 d5 (better is 9 ... dxf3 10 dxf3 d7) 10 0-0 0-0-0 11 c4! dc (11 ... d3 12 d2) 12 dxc4 a6 13 d1 d7 14 d3 ± Lisitsin-Holmov, 21st USSR Ch 1954.

White can also consider a form of London System:

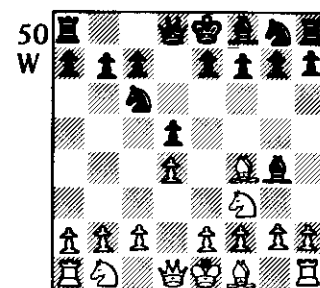
3 d4!? d4(50)

Continuing the fight for e5.

If 3 ... d5 4 e3 e6 5 d3 d6 6 dxf5 ef 7 d3! d4 8 d5+ d7 9 0-0! ± Euwe-Colle, match 1924.

4 e3

4 c4 won't work here (4 ... dc!). An alternative worth examining is 4 d2 e.g. 4 ... e6 5 c3 d6 6 d3



d6 7 d5 dxe5 8 de d5 9 a4 d3 10 hg d5 11 e3 a6 12 g4 d6 13 0-0-0 b5 14 d4 d7 15 d3 d8 (Black dare not castle.) 16 d3 dxd3 17 dxd3 a5 18 d4 d7 19 e4 b4 (19 ... c5!?) 20 ed (1-0, 40) Golz-Schmidt, E.German Ch 1968.

4 ... e6
5 d2

A cautionary tale is Langeweg-Dückstein, Zurich 1976: 5 c4 d6 6 cd?? d4+ 0-1 (because if 7 d2 d4 8 d2 dxf3 or 8 dc dxd2).

Also playable:

a) 5 h3 d5 6 d2 d6 = - ECO.
b) 5 d2:
b1) 5 ... d6 6 d3 d6 7 d2 0-0 8 c4 d7 9 d1 d8 10 a3 d8 11 0-0 d3 12 hg d5 13 d3 d5 14 a4 d4 = Zamikhovsky-Ravinsky, USSR 1949.

b2) 5 ... d7 can also be considered with the idea of ... d6 and ... d6.

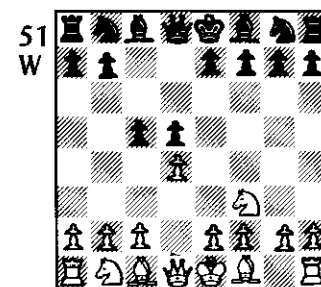
5 ... d6
6 d5 dxe2

7 dxe2 dxe5 8 dxe5 c6 9 0-0 d7 10 d2 0-0 11 dxf6 dxf6 12 c4 d7 = de Greiff-Spassky, Havana 1962.

A5

2 ... c5(51)

Black is probably taking on too many commitments with this. In effect he is trying to play the Queen's Gambit himself, a tempo down. It is not easy to demonstrate an outright refutation but White should at least retain the advantage of the move.



A51 3 c4

A52 3 dc!?

Also:

a) 3 e3 is unnecessarily passive, but could transpose into lines of the Colle considered earlier in the book, after 3 ... d6 for example. Others:

a1) Not 3 ... c4! 4 d3 f5 5 d5 d6 6 b3 ± Pillsbury-Marshall, Buffalo 1901.

a2) 3 ... d6 offers White a last chance to play 4 c4, which however gives him a not very aggressive system against the Tarrasch Defence. Others (4 b3, 4 d2 or 4 d3!?) allow Black a free position with 4 ... d4, as often demonstrated in games by Dus-Hotimirski before the 1914-18 war.

b) 3 d4 b6?! (3 ... d6 chapter 11) 4 dc bxb2 5 e5 b4+ 6 d3 e6 7 b1 xc5 8 b5 a6 9 e3 f6 10 d4 e7 11 a7 ± Schlechter-Leonhardt, Carlsbad 1911.

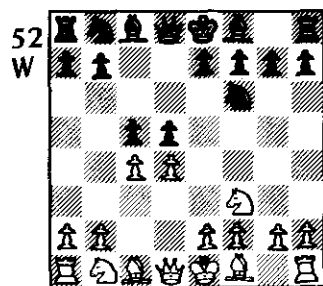
c) 3 g3 e6 4 g2 d6 5 0-0 cd (5 ... d6!? 6 c4 is a form of Catalan.) 6 dxd4 d5 7 e3 dge7 8 b3 b6 9 d1d2 0-0 10 c4 dc 11 dxc4 bxd1 = Sandor-Karaklajic, Beverwijk 1967.

A51

3 c4

This was probably introduced into master praxis by the great Polish strategist Akiba Rubinstein. He usually steered the game into a Queen's Gambit, Tarrasch variation e.g. by 3 ... e6 4 cd ed 5 d3 d6 6 g3. With this system he scored fine victories against Marshall (Breslau 1912) and Capablanca (San Sebastian 1911). Unless Black is a Tarrasch Defence specialist he must reject 3 ... e6 and look for another move.

3 ... d6!?(52)



This position has been comparatively little studied. Other moves:

a) 3 ... cd!? 4 cd d6 see below.

Not 4 ... bxd5 5 d3! (followed by bxd4) nor 4 ... a5+ 5 d2 bxd5 6 d3 b5 7 dxd4 d7 8 e4 d6 9 f4 - Koltanowski.

b) 3 ... dc when:

b1) 4 d7? bxd1+ 5 bxd1 d6 6 e3 d4 7 dxc4 e6 8 a3 dxc5 9 b4 d6 10 b2 d6 11 d2 e7! 12 e2 (better 12 h3 first) 12 ... d5! ♣ Cohn-Rubinstein, St Petersburg 1909.

b2) 4 d5 (or 4 e4!? - Kmoch) 4 ... d6 5 d3 followed by e4 and dxc4 with advantage - Koltanowski. 5 ... b5? is of course of no avail because of 6 dxb5 dxd5? 7 bxd5! bxd5 8 d7+ etc. What would Rubinstein have done? Black has at any rate a poor form of Benoni.

4 cd

4 dc is also playable. Then:

a) 4 ... a5+? 5 d2 bxc5 6 cd d5 7 d3 dxd5 8 b3 d6 9 d3 a5 10 d4 ± Holloway-Harding, Cambridge 1972.

b) 4 ... e6! (= Pachman) transposes to Alekhine-Kaufman, A52. Does Black really equalize?

4 ... cd

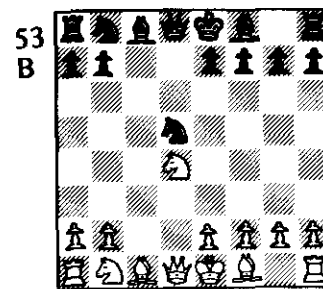
5 dxd4!

Thelen-Pachman, Hradec Kralove 1944, went instead 5 bxd4 bxd5 6 d3 bxd4 (6 ... a5!? - Bisguier) 7 dxd4 a6! 8 e4 e5 =. Or 8 g3 d7! (Polugayevsky-Vaganian, 42nd USSR Ch 1974) and Black drew with no trouble, but not 8 ... e5 9 d2 d7 10 d2 d6 11 e4! ± - O'Kelly.

5 ... dxd5(53)

Or 5 ... a6 6 e4 dxe4 7 a4+ d7

8 b3 d5 9 e3 g6 10 d3 b7 11 b3 ± Alekhine-Wolf, Pistyan 1922.



This is a position from the English Opening (1 c4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 dxd4 d5 5 cd dxd5). That should put it beyond the scope of this volume, but for the fact that most books on the English (e.g. Taimanov's and Cafferty's) do not consider this variation. The following summarises the theory as I find it:

6 e4!

The only move to set Black problems.

6 ... d6

Also critical are:

a) 6 ... b4 7 a4+ d4c6 8 dxc6 dxc6 9 d3 e.g.:

a1) 9 ... g6 10 d3 d7 11 b5 d7 12 d1 0-0 13 0-0 b8 14 d5! d8 15 d5! d8 16 a3! b8 17 g3 d8 18 dxa7 ± Pachman-Gligoric, Lubliana 1945. a2) 9 ... a5+ 10 bxa5 dxa5 11 d3 e6 12 d6+ d6 13 a3 ± - Pirc. a3) 9 ... d7 10 d3 e6 11 d2 d7 12 0-0 0-0 (Zita-Louma, Rakovnik 1940) 13 d1d1 ± (with

chances on the b-side) - Pachman.

b) 6 ... d7 (best, according to Pachman) 7 d3 e5 8 d6b5 bxd1+ 9 bxd1 dxb5 10 dxb5 (10 dxb5+ d7 = Levin-Pinkus, USA Ch 1946) 10 ... a6 11 d3 d6! (11 ... b6 12 d4 ±) when, thanks to the badly-placed white king Black obtains compensation for the pawn sacrificed. Zita analysed 12 dxa7 d8+ 13 d1 d5 and 12 dxa7 d6! 13 d3 0-0-0+. This line requires further investigation.

7 d3

Pachman recommends 7 d6+ d7 8 e5! e.g. 8 ... dxb5 9 dxb5 bxd1+ 10 bxd1 d5 11 d2 a6 12 d1 ±.

7 ... e5

'7 ... e6 was preferable' - Kmoch.

8 d6b5+!

Not 8 d6b5 (Rubinstein-Reti, Budapest 1926) 8 ... a6! - Kmoch.

8 ... d7

9 d5! d6

10 d6+ d6 11 bxd6 d7 12 dxe7+ dxe7 13 d3! ± Rubinstein-Mieses, St Petersburg 1909.

A52

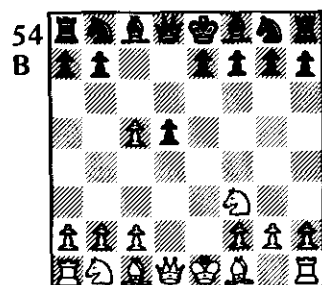
3 dc!?(54)

A reversed Queen's Gambit Accepted.

3 ... e6

Alternatives:

a) Alekhine-Kaufman, Odessa 1919, went instead 3 ... d6 4 c4 e6 5 cd (5 d3 dxc5 6 cd is only = according to Neikirkh and Tsvetkov.) 5 ... ed 6 d3 d6 7 g3 dxc5 (N and T recommend 7 ... dxc5 8 d2 d7 9 0-0 0-0 10 d3



af5 =.) 8 dxc5 dxc5 9 ag2 0-0 10 0-0 af5 (Black has a poor form of Tarrasch Defence now.) 11 c3 e8 12 d4 ag6 13 h3! de4 14 e1 dxc3 15 dxc3 de4 16 b3 b8 17 f4 ±.

b) 3 ... a5+ (Golombek) 4 dbd2 dxc5 5 e3 dxc6 6 a3 ± - Euwe.

4 e4!?

Not 4 a3 dxc5 5 b4 ad6 6 db2 df6 7 e3 0-0 8 dbd2 a5! ♣ Swiderski-Schlechter, Nuremberg 1896.

4 ... dxc5
5 db5+ dxc6
6 ed

Or 6 0-0 a6 7 a4 dge7 8 dxc3 d4 9 de2 0-0 10 a3 e5 11 b4 a7 12 dg3 e6 13 b5 ab 14 dxb5 h6 = Pillsbury-Marshall, New York 1904.

6 ... ed
7 0-0 dge7

Not 7 ... df6 8 dxc3 0-0 9 dg5 de7 10 dxf6 dxf6 11 dxd5 dxc3 12 dxd8 dxd8 13 bc ± Lasker-Tarrasch, match 1908.

8 dxc3

Capablanca-Rubinstein, Bad Kissingen 1928, saw 8 dbd2 when Black is a tempo up on the Tarrasch

variation of the French Defence (3 d2 c5) and so should have a good game. After 8 ... 0-0 9 db3 db6 10 e1 ag4 11 d3 dg6 12 h3 dxf3 13 dxf3 instead of 13 ... dce5? Rubinstein should have played 13 ... dge5 14 d1 dxd3 15 dxd3 dxf6 = (16 de3 d4 17 d2 dfe8) according to Pachman.

8 ... 0-0
9 df4 dg4
10 de2 a6
11 h3 de6 =

Blackburne-Tarrasch, Leipzig 1894.

B

1 d4 df6
2 d3

2 ... e6 and 2 ... g6 in this position have already been discussed in detail. Black can also play:

B1 2 ... d6

B2 2 ... c5

Also:

a) 2 ... de4?! (Keres-Becker, Vienna 1937) might be well met by 3 df4! (compare chapter 5). White is a tempo up on the Trompowski Attack (2 dg5 de4 3 df4).

b) 2 ... b6 can be met by either a Colle or London formation, or by 3 dg5 (beyond the scope of this book).

c) 2 ... b5!? is chiefly a psychological move. These Polish/Sokolsky systems for White and Black still await a definitive treatment. I recommend 3 c3 e.g. 3 ... db7 4 a4 a6 5 ab ab 6 dxa8 dxa8 7 db3.

d) 2 ... f6? 3 dxc3 df5 4 dh4 dg6 5 dxc6 hg 6 d3 df7 7 e4 c6 8 d3

e6 9 d3 ± Pillsbury-Magyar, Vienna 1902.

e) 2 ... c6 may be answered by 3 e3 and a Colle formation in which Black cannot readily find counterplay. A side fianchetto would be pointless and a later ... c5 would cost him a tempo, so 3 ... g6 is his best plan. White can also play 3 c4 (when 3 ... d5 is a Slav Queen's Gambit), 3 df4 or 3 dg5!?

B1

2 ... d6

Black invites transposition to the Old Indian by 3 c4. White has many possible replies, some of which (3 g3, 3 dg5) are beyond the scope of this book.

3 d3!?

This could be played to steer the game into a Pirc Defence (after 3 ... g6).

Other lines with some independent significance are:

a) 3 dbd2 df5 (Pachman suggested 3 ... d5!? or 3 ... dbd7 4 e4 e5 5 c3 g6.) 4 dh4! d7 5 e4 g6 6 dxc4 c6 7 dhf3 dg7 8 db3 0-0 9 0-0 a5 10 c3 with a popular Modern Defence position, except that the black bishop is ill-placed on d7. Trifunovic-Puc, Yugoslavia 1967, continued 10 ... b5 11 a3 d7 12 e5 d5 13 e1 a4 14 a2 df5 15 ed dxd6 16 de4 ±.

b) A Bogoljubow-Reti game went instead 3 df4 dbd7 4 dbd2 g6 5 e4 dg7 6 d3 0-0 with a position akin to the Geller system against the Modern Defence. The continuation was 7 h3 c6 (better 7 ... e8 - Reti)

8 0-0 d7 9 h2 e5 10 c3 dh5 11 a4! a5 12 dxc4 b5 13 ab c6 14 de3 d6 15 g4! ±.

This game can be found complete in Reti's book *Masters of the Chess Board*.

3 ... dg4

Other alternatives to 3 ... g6 are: a) 3 ... df5 4 dh4 e6 5 dxf5 ef 6 d3 d7 7 g3 d5 8 dg2 c6 = Sämisch-Reti, Pistyan 1922.

b) 3 ... d5 was recommended by Pachman in view of 4 dg5? de4 and 4 df4 df5 5 e3 e6 followed by ... de7, ... 0-0 and ... c5. But an interesting alternative is 4 d3, e.g. 4 ... dbd7 5 dg5 e6 6 e4 de7 (a sort of French Defence!) 7 e5 de4!? 8 dxe7 dxe7 9 dxe4 de 10 dxe4 db4 11 d2 dxb2 12 db1 dxa2 13 d3 with compensation for the pawn; Smyslov-Bednarski, Havana 1967.

4 e4 dbd7?!

4 ... e6 is better.

5 e5 dg8
6 h3 dxf3

7 dxf3 c6 8 df4 d5 (8 ... e6! ± *Informator* 25) 9 e6! fe 10 d3 dg6 11 de2 ± e.g. 11 ... g6 12 dxe6 dg7 13 0-0 (13 0-0-0) 13 ... dh5 14 dg5!? (14 de3) 14 ... df8?! (14 ... d4! ∞) Kasparov-Lutikov, Sokolsky Mem., Minsk 1978.

B2

2 ... c5

Now 3 c4 is an English - which would transpose to A51 - and could also become a Catalan or Tarrasch Defence.

White can also steer for a Colle by

the conservative 3 e3 or play:

3 d5 b5!?

The alternative is 3 ... d6, which will normally transpose to the Modern Benoni (or at least some sort of Benoni) after White's best move 4 c4.

The only line of independent significance is Spielmann's 3 ... d6 4 d3 d5!?:

a) 5 g3 h6 (5 ... d4! = Pachman) 6 d2 g5 7 h4?! (better 7 0-0) 7 ... g4 8 d2 d6 9 e4 d6 10 c4 d7 11 d4 0-0 12 d2 d7 13 f3 b5! 14 fg (14 d3 d4 or 14 dxb5 gf 15 dxf3 dxe4) 14 ... bc 15 h5?! dxe4 16 dxe4 dxe4 17 dxe4 dxb2 18 d1 d5! 19 f1 c3 20 e2 d7 (0-1, 30) Kmoch-Spielmann, Vienna 1922.

b) 5 d2 g5! 6 e4 d6 when:

b1) 7 h4 g4 8 d3 d6 9 d4 a6 10 a4 b6 11 d4 d5! = Grünfeld-Spielmann, Innsbruck 1922.

b2) 7 d2 d7 8 0-0 d6 9 d1? (After 9 f4! might Black play for d-side castling?) 9 ... 0-0 10 d1 d5 11 d3 dxf3+ 12 dxf3 h6 13 d1 (White fails to find a plan.) 13 ... d7 14 d3 d5 15 f3 f5 f Grünfeld-Spielmann, Pistyan 1922.

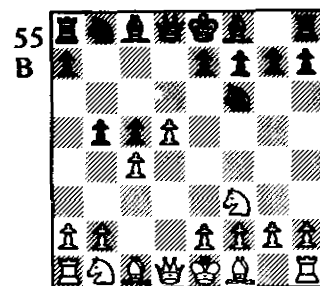
4 c4(55)

4 d5! could be played to complicate the game, and 4 ... b6! is an interesting reply.

4 ... d7

4 ... e6 transposes to the Blumenfeld Counter Gambit.

4 ... d6 or 4 ... g6 would become



a Benko Gambit.

5 a4

Best according to Pachman, who analyses:

a) 5 d2 e6! f.

b) 5 d3 b4 6 d1 e6 f.

5 ... bc

6 d3

Here Black has:

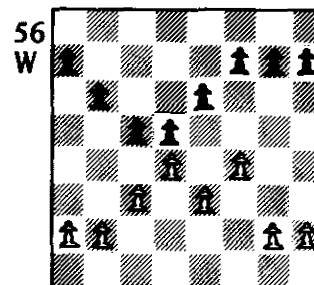
a) 6 ... e6 7 e4 (±) 7 ... dxe4! 8 dxe4 ed 9 d3 d4 10 dxc4! dc 11 dxf7+ dxf7 12 d3+ ± Rubinstein-Spielmann, Vienna 1922.

b) 6 ... d6! 7 e4 g6 8 dxc4 d7 9 0-0. There is insufficient experience with this sort of position, which can arise when the Benko Gambit (1 d4 d6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 b5) is met by 4 a4 bc.

Since the player of Queen Pawn Openings presumably chooses 2 d3 rather than 2 c4 to avoid defences like the Benoni, my advice is to avoid all this sort of thing by not playing 3 d5. Instead 3 c4 or 3 e3 (which should transpose to lines considered earlier in the book, or to a symmetrical Queen's Gambit Tarrasch) are recommended.

8 Stonewall (2 e3 with f4 and c3)

This opening, though rarely seen nowadays, was not uncommon before the 1914-18 war. It is characterised by the white pawn structure shown in diagram 56.



It is easy to see why this formation is called the stonewall! White sets up a barrier on the dark squares and intends to place a knight on e5 in the middle-game, or to attack on the d-side with moves like g2-g4-g5 and/or f4-f5. The disadvantages of the opening are the hemmed-in queen's bishop (even more restricted in its scope than in the Colle) and the very slow development of White's attack which gives plenty of time to Black to arrange his

counter-blows.

Black's bishops stand best on b7 and e7 against the Stonewall. Nor should he be in any hurry to castle. White is better placed to attack on the d-side than in the centre.

1 d4 d5

White can also set about stonewalling against 1 ... d6 by 2 e3 etc., but Black has an even wider range of counters:

a) 2 ... c5 3 c3 b6 followed by ... d7, ... d6, ... d6d7 and an eventual ... e5.

b) 2 ... b6 3 f4 d6 4 d3 c5 5 d3 g6 6 0-0 d7 7 c3 0-0 8 d1 d5 (8 ... d6! d ... e5) 9 d4 d6 10 dxa6 dxa6 11 d6d2 b5 12 a3 d6 13 d5 d6 14 g4 ... Black has a sound development but White retains prospects of a d-side attack, Kan-Alatortsev, USSR Young Masters 1936.

c) 2 ... d5 was tried in Nenarokov-Grekov, Moscow Ch 1928. That game continued 3 d3 c5 4 c3 d6d7 5 f4 d4 6 dxe4 de 7 d2 f5 8 d3 b6 9 dxe4! fe 10 d5+ g6 11 d5 d6 12 d5 e6 13 dxe6

♞h4+ 14 g3 ♜f6 15 ♜xe4 ♞b7 16 d5 ♜f7 17 ♜a4 ♜e7 18 e4 ♞g7 19 0-0 ♞he8 20 f5 ♜g8 21 ♞f4 ♞e5 22 ♞ad1 g4 23 e4 a6 24 ♜e4 ♞f7 25 ♞xb8 ♞xb8 26 f6 ♞xf6 27 ♜f5 ♞g7 28 d6 ♞xd6 29 ♞xd6 1-0.

2 e3 ♞f6

2 ... e6 3 ♞d3 c5 4 c3 ♞c6 5 f4 g5!? 6 fg ♜xg5 7 ♞f3 ♜g4 8 ♜e2 f5 9 ♞bd2 ♞f6 10 ♞f1 ♞g8 (Showalter-Maroczy, London 1899) is unclear.

3 ♞d3 c5

This is generally played, to gain space, but is not absolutely forced.

Instead 3 ... ♞c6 4 f4 has been met by:

a) 4 ... ♞g4 5 ♞f3 e6 6 c3 ♞e7 7 ♞bd2 0-0 8 ♜e2 ♞h5?! (8 ... ♞f5!? - Neikirkh and Tsvetkov) 9 ♞xh7+ ♜xh7 10 ♞g5+ ♞xg5 11 ♜xg4 ♞xf4 12 ef ♞h6 13 ♞f3 ± Lundquist-Reyes, Moscow 1956.

b) 4 ... e6 5 a3 (instead of c3 since ... c5 has been omitted) 5 ... ♞d6 6 ♞f3 0-0 7 ♞c3 b6 8 ♞e5 ♞b7 9 ♜f3 ♞d7 10 ♜h3 f5! = Lee-Chigorin, London 1899.

c) 4 ... ♞b4 5 ♞f3 ♞xd3+ and now: c1) 6 ♜xd3 e6 7 0-0 ♞e7 8 b3 0-0 9 c4 b6 10 ♞c3 ♞b7 11 ♞b2 c5 12 ♞ac1 ♞c8 13 ♞e5 ♞e4 = Gottschall-Schlechter, Munich 1900.

c2) 6 cd e6 (6 ... g6 may also equalize.) 7 0-0 ♞e7 8 ♞bd2 0-0 9 ♜c2 ♞d7 10 ♞b3 ♞a4 11 ♜c3 b6 12 ♜e1 c5 ♞ Tarrasch-Chigorin, Hastings 1895.

3 ... g6 is also possible, e.g. 4 ♞d2 ♞g7 5 f4 c5 6 c3 ♜c7 7 ♞e2 (7 ♜e2 0-0 8 ♞g3!? may hold the balance - ECO.) 7 ... ♞f5 8 ♞xf5 gf 9 0-0

♞bd7 10 ♞f3 ♞e4 11 ♞d2 e6 12 ♞e1 0-0-0 ♞ Goldberg-Kamyshov, USSR 1949.

4 c3

Other possibilities (4 ♞c3!?) have not yet been explored.

4 ... e6

Other possibilities:

a) 4 ... ♞c6 5 f4 ♞g4 (5 ... g6!? ECO; 5 ... e6 below) 6 ♞f3 e6 7 ♞bd2 (7 0-0 ♞d6 8 ♜e1 0-0 9 ♞e5 ♞f5! ♞ Pachman) 7 ... ♞d6 8 g3? (or 8 0-0 cd! ♞) 8 ... ♞c8 9 0-0 ♞d7 10 ♜e1 0-0 11 e4 cd 12 ♞xd4 ♜b6 13 ♜f2 e5! 14 ed ♞e7 15 fe ♞xe5 16 ♞e4 f5 ♞ Oskam-Euwe, corres 1920.

b) 4 ... ♞bd7 5 f4 g6 6 ♞f3 ♞g7 7 ♞bd2 (7 0-0 0-0 8 ♞e5 ♜c7 ♞) 7 ... b6 (7 ... 0-0 is premature, and White may attack with h3, g4 etc.) 8 ♞bd2 ♞b7 is a reversed Dutch.

c) 4 ... ♜c7 5 f4 ♞g4 6 ♞f3 e6 7 ♜a4 ♞bd7 8 ♞e5 c4 9 ♞xg4 ♞xg4 10 ♞e2 ♞h6 11 b3 cb 12 ab a6 13 0-0 ♞d6 14 c4 0-0 15 c5 ♞e7 16 b4 ± Chajes-Capablanca, New York 1911.

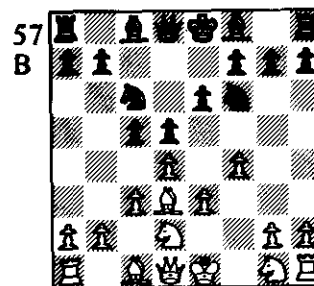
5 f4 ♞c6

6 ♞d2(57)

Or 6 ♞f3 ♞e4 7 0-0 f5 8 ♞e5 ♞xe5 9 fe ♞d7 10 ♞d2 ♞e7 11 ♞xe4 de 12 ♞c4 b5 13 ♞b3 c4 14 ♞c2 0-0 15 ♞d2 ♞c6 ♞ Marshall-Capablanca, New York 1911.

6 ... ♞d6

The most common response, but the bishop may be better placed on e7 so that an invasion by White's ♞e5 can be repulsed by ... ♞xe5 followed by ... ♞fd7 and ... f6.



Others:

a) 6 ... ♞d7? 7 ♞g3? (better 7 ♜e2 to avoid the next possibility) 7 ... ♞e7? (missing 7 ... ♞g4, a tempo gain allowing Black to set up a counter-Stonewall by 8 ♜e2 f5) 8 0-0 ♜c7 9 ♞e5 ♞d6? (The best hope now is 9 ... 0-0 intending ... ♞e8 and ... f6.) 10 ♜f3 cd? (Releases the tension; 10 ... c4 would be even worse.) 11 ed ♞b8 12 g4 b5 13 g5 ♞g8 14 ♜h5 g6 15 ♞xg6 fg 16 ♞xg6 hg 17 ♜xh8 ♜f8 18 ♞f3 ♞e8 19 ♞e5 b4 20 ♞f3 ♞ce7 21 ♞h3 ♞xe5 22 fe ♞f5 23 ♞d2 b3 24 ♞h7 ♜a5 25 ♞f1 1-0 was a junior game, annotated by Barden in *The Field*, 1975.

b) 6 ... b6 7 ♞g3 ♞b7 8 ♞e5 c4 (better 8 ... ♜c7) 9 ♞c2 b5 10 0-0 g6 11 e4 ♞e7 12 a4 a6 13 ab ab 14 ♞xa8 ♜xa8 15 f5! ♞g7 16 ♞xf7!? (Alekhine-Liubimov, Moscow 1909) is unclear, but 16 ♞g4 (Alekhine) would have given White the initiative without the risks of a sacrifice.

c) 6 ... ♞e7 7 ♞g3 0-0 8 ♞e5 ♜c7 9 0-0 b6?! 10 g4 (Sheila Jackson-B. Green, Manchester Open 1974) 10 ... ♞e5! 11 fe ♞d7 and Black plays

on the ♜-side - J.E.Littlewood in *Chess*.

d) 6 ... ♜c7 sets a positional trap: d1) 7 ♞g3? cd! 8 cd? (According to Nimzowitsch, White would have compensation for the pawn after 8 ed ♜xf4 9 ♞c4 ♜c7 10 ♞ce5 ♞d6 11 ♜e2.) 8 ... ♞b4 9 ♞b1 ♞d7 10 a3 ♞c8! 11 0-0 ♞b5! 12 ♞e1 ♞c2 13 ♞xc2 ♜xc2 14 ♜xc2 ♞xc2 15 h3 ♞d6 16 ♞b1 ♞e4 17 ♞fd2 ♞d3 ♞ (0-1, 37) Van Vliet v. Znosko-Borowski, Ostend 1907.

d2) '7 ♞h3 followed by ♜f3 would have been the better course' - Nimzowitsch, *My System* (p.193).

d3) 7 ♞d3 ♞e4 8 ♞e5 cd 9 ♞xe4 ♞xe5 10 fe de 11 ed f5! 12 ef gf 13 ♜h5 ♜f7 14 ♜b5 ♜d7 15 ♜h5 ♜f7 ½:½ Marshall-Capablanca, match 1909.

7 ♞h3!?

Bagirov recommends 7 ♜f3 in ECO, e.g. 7 ... ♞d7 8 ♞h3 ♜b6 9 ♞f2 0-0-0 10 0-0 ♜b8 11 e4 de 12 ♞fxe4 ♞xe4 13 ♞xe4 ♞e7 14 dc ♞xc5 15 ♞xc5 ♜xc5 16 ♞e3 ± Marshall-Rubinstein, Vienna 1908.

7 ♞g3 is also good:

a) 7 ... b6 8 ♞e5 ♞b7 9 ♜f3 ± Sultan Khan-Rubinstein, Prague 1931.

b) 7 ... cd 8 cd ♞d7 9 a3 ♞c8 10 ♜e2 ♜b6 11 0-0 ♞e7 12 ♞e5 ♞c6 13 b4 ♞a4 14 ♞b2 ♞c2 15 ♞ac1 ♞xd3 16 ♜xd3 0-0 17 ♞b3 (Maroczy-Janowski, Vienna 1902). White won in 42 moves, but is Black at a serious disadvantage?

7 ... ♜c7

Other tries:

a) 7 ... ♖b6 8 0-0 ♙d7 9 ♗h1 0-0-0
10 ♖f3 ♙e8 11 ♖f2 ♖d7 12 ♗e2 f6
13 c4 ♙h5 14 g4 ♙f7 15 a3 ♗he8
16 dc ♖xc5 17 b4 (1-0, 46) Breyer-
Leonhardt, Berlin 1920.

b) 7 ... ♙d7 see below.

8 0-0 ♙d7

Possibly 8 ... b6 and 9 ... ♙b7 is better.

9 ♗e2 ♙d8

10 ♖f3 0-0

11 ♖e5 ♙c8 12 ♖f2 b6 13 ♗f3 ♙b7
14 g4 ♖e7 15 g5 ♖e8 16 ♗h3 g6 17
♖fg4 f5 18 ♖h6+ ♗g7 19 ♗h4 ♖g8
20 ♙f3! ♖xh6? (Loses; Black
should play 20 ... ♙xe5 first.) 21
♗xh6+ ♗g8 22 ♖xg6! hg 23 ♗xg6+
♗g7 (23 ... ♖g7 24 ♙h3 followed

by ♙e2) 24 ♗xe6+ ♗f7 25 ♙xf5
♖g7 26 ♙h7+! ♗xh7? (26 ... ♗h8
27 ♗h6 ♗h5 28 ♙h3 ♗xh6 29
♙xh6) 27 ♗h6+ ♗g8 28 g6 1-0
Sorokin-Talvik, Tbilisi Ch 1929.

Summary

The main column line (after 6 ... ♙d6) tends to favour White, because his centre is so solid that Black has difficulty in finding central counterplay against the almost automatic White ♗-side build-up. However, there are several promising suggestions for Black in the notes.

9 Blackmar-Diemer Gambit (2 e4)

The Blackmar-Diemer Gambit (1 d4 d5 2 e4 de 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 f3) is one of the small class of openings which, although they must be considered dubious from an objective viewpoint, have the capacity to inspire fanatical devotion in some players. White sacrifices a central pawn and apparently jeopardises the safety of his king. On the other hand, Black is set unfamiliar problems and (because of the very outrageousness of the gambit) is often waging a psychological war within himself at the same time as trying to solve the problems on the board.

A loss against the Blackmar-Diemer in a serious game is one of the most ignominious fates that can befall a chess player - especially as Black losses tend to be short and catastrophic - and Black is loth even to draw. All this of course helps White! So does the fact that most masters who have written on the opening (e.g. Pachman) have tended to under-estimate the dangers that Black faces. The treatment of the

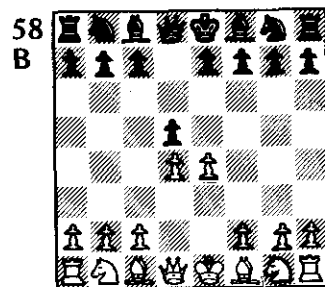
gambit by Bagirov in ECO is manifestly inadequate - just one note, a few lines only.

The Blackmar-Diemer is the epitome of coffee-house chess and the people who employ it are often very resourceful players who have studied the published analyses (e.g. by Diemer, Gunderam, Tejler and Kampars) and have worked out their own ways of dealing with the standard defences. Therefore Black should temper with caution his joy at receiving a free pawn when his opponent ventures to play the gambit against him.

The difficulty in dealing adequately with the Blackmar-Diemer in a theoretical work is not a shortage of practical examples and analyses; rather the contrary. The problem is that these ideas have rarely been tested in the fire of international competition among masters. In the majority of available games one or other side plays unconvincingly. It is often very hard to assess whether White has or has not sufficient compensation for

his pawn in the absence of top-class games. Whether you will be successful with the Blackmar-Diemer chiefly depends on your style and on the level of opposition which you meet. In a friendly or lightning game, however, I am all for playing this gambit: it leads almost inevitably to unusual and exciting games.

1 d4 d5
2 e4(58)



First discussed by the New Orleans player A.E. Blackmar in *Brentano's Chess Monthly*, in 1882.

2 ... de

Black can play 2 ... e6 (French) or 2 ... c6 (Caro-Kann) but if 2 ... e5? 3 d3 de 4 f3 f5 (4 ... d6 5 fe dxe4 6 d3!) 5 fe! and if 5 ... d4 6 g3! dxe4 7 e2 d4 8 d2 ± - Diemer.

3 d3!

This was recommended by von Popiel in *Deutsches Wochensach*, 1893.

Blackmar's 3 f3 is bad because of 3 ... e5! e.g. 4 de (or 4 d5 d3!) 4 ... d4 5 d3 d3 (Diemer) 6

d4 d3 7 ± - Korn.

3 ... d3

Not 3 ... d3? 4 f3 ef 5 d3 d3 6 d4 d3 7 0-0-0 c6 8 d5! d3? 9 dc! ± Boyarinov-Utemov, USSR 1962.

3 ... e5?! is complicated. Diemer devotes nearly twenty pages to attempts to refute it (4 de - von Popiel; also 4 d5!? or 4 dxe4 are discussed at length) but we shall follow Arthur Hall's recommendation in *Chess* (1964). White can play 4 d3 with good compensation, e.g.:

a) 4 ... d3 5 d3 d3 6 f3 d3 7 d5 ef ('too good to be true' - Diemer) 8 d3 d3 9 d3 d3 10 0-0 d3 11 a3 d3 12 d3 d3 13 d3 ef 14 d3 d3 (14 ... d3 had to be tried.) 15 d3 d3! d3 16 d3+ d3 17 d3 d3 18 d3 d3 19 d3 d3 20 d3 d3 21 d3 d3 22 d3 d3 23 d3 d3 24 d3 d3 1-0 H. Schmidt-Melcher, W. Germany 1956.

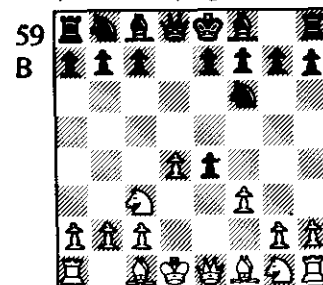
b) 4 ... ed 5 d3 d3! and now:

b1) 5 ... d3 6 d3 d3 7 d3 d3 8 d3 d3 9 d3 d3 10 d3 d3 11 d3 d3 12 d3 d3 13 d3 d3 14 d3 d3 15 d3 d3 16 d3 d3 17 d3 d3 18 d3 d3 19 d3 d3 20 d3 d3 21 d3 d3 22 d3 d3 23 d3 d3 24 d3 d3 1-0 H. Schmidt-Melcher, W. Germany 1956.

b2) If 5 ... c5 6 d3 d3! d3 7 d3 d3 8 d3 d3 9 d3 d3 10 d3 d3 11 d3 d3 12 d3 d3 13 d3 d3 14 d3 d3 15 d3 d3 16 d3 d3 17 d3 d3 18 d3 d3 19 d3 d3 20 d3 d3 21 d3 d3 22 d3 d3 23 d3 d3 24 d3 d3 1-0 H. Schmidt-Melcher, W. Germany 1956.

4 f3(59)

4 d3, transposing to what is now known as the Richter-Veresov Attack, was von Popiel's plan. The synthesis of 3 d3 and 4 f3 deserves to be called the Blackmar-Diemer Gambit, though as he explains in his book (p.15) Diemer found this move-order in a footnote to the *Handbuch des Schachspiels*; it had been played in 1889 by one Dr. Ryder of Leipzig.



Only two moves are worth considering here:

A 4 ... d3

B 4 ... ef

Others in brief:

a) 4 ... e5? 5 de! d3 d3 6 d3 d3! d3 7 d3 d3 8 d3 d3 (the exchange sacrifice is unsound.) 8 d3 d3 9 ef gf 10 d3 d3 11 d3 d3 12 d3 d3 13 d3 d3 14 d3 d3 15 d3 d3 16 d3 d3 17 d3 d3 18 d3 d3 19 d3 d3 20 d3 d3 21 d3 d3 22 d3 d3 23 d3 d3 24 d3 d3 1-0 H. Schmidt-Melcher, W. Germany 1956.

b) 4 ... e6 5 fe d3 d3 6 d3 d3 7 d3 d3 8 d3 d3 9 d3 d3 10 d3 d3 11 d3 d3 12 d3 d3 13 d3 d3 14 d3 d3 15 d3 d3 16 d3 d3 17 d3 d3 18 d3 d3 19 d3 d3 20 d3 d3 21 d3 d3 22 d3 d3 23 d3 d3 24 d3 d3 1-0 H. Schmidt-Melcher, W. Germany 1956.

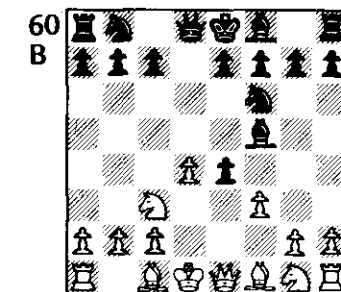
d3 20 d3 d3 21 d3 d3! d3 22 d3 d3 23 d3 d3 24 d3 d3 25 d3 d3 26 d3 d3 27 d3 d3 28 d3 d3 29 d3 d3 30 d3 d3 31 d3 d3 32 d3 d3 33 d3 d3 34 d3 d3 35 d3 d3 36 d3 d3 37 d3 d3 38 d3 d3 39 d3 d3 40 d3 d3 41 d3 d3 42 d3 d3 43 d3 d3 44 d3 d3 45 d3 d3 46 d3 d3 47 d3 d3 48 d3 d3 49 d3 d3 50 d3 d3 51 d3 d3 52 d3 d3 53 d3 d3 54 d3 d3 55 d3 d3 56 d3 d3 57 d3 d3 58 d3 d3 59 d3 d3 60 d3 d3 1-0 H. Schmidt-Melcher, W. Germany 1956.

c) 4 ... c6 5 d3 d3 (5 fe e5! O'Kelly) 5 ... d3 d3 6 fe e5 7 d3 d3 8 d3 d3! - Diemer.

d) 4 ... c5!? 5 d5 ef 6 d3 d3 (6 d3 d3 compare B12) 6 ... d3 d3 (6 ... g6!? - Hall) 7 d3 d3 8 d3 d3 9 h3 d3 10 d3 d3 11 d3 d3 12 0-0 d3 13 d3 d3 14 g4 d3 15 d3 d3 16 d3 d3 17 h4 ± - Diemer.

A

4 ... d3(60)



Hans Müller's Vienna Defence, which is based on sensible grounds. Since most of Black's losses are due to backward development, resulting from pawn-grabbing, why should Black not refuse the pawn and develop instead? White's fourth move, weakening his e-side, means that he cannot switch to a positional game, but must find ways to complicate - usually at the cost of

further holes in his ♖-side pawn structure.

White can now try:

A1 5 g4

A2 5 fe

Diemer also considers 5 d5 (when I suggest 5 ... e6!) and 5 ♖g5 (5 ... ♖bd7).

Then there is the Solter Attack: 5 ♖c4 e6 6 g4 (If 6 fe ♖xe4 7 ♖f3 ♖e7! ♢) 6 ... ♖xg4 7 fg ♖h4+ 8 ♖f1 ♖xg4 with active counterplay; Bellin-Böhm, London 1977.

A1

5 g4 ♖g6

White hopes to harass the minor pieces and use the advanced pawns in an eventual attack on the castled king, but his own king is in at least equal danger.

6 h4(61)

This at least has the merit of consistency. Others:

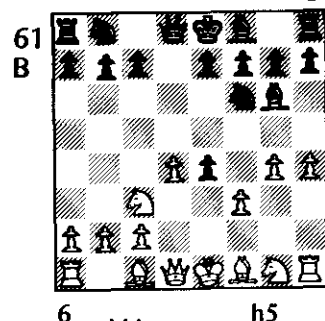
a) 6 f4 e6 7 ♖g2 ♖b4? 8 a3 ♖xc3+ 9 bc ± was suggested by the German postal player M.Kloss. However, Euwe's 7 ... c5 is a considerable improvement.

b) 6 g5 ♖d5 (6 ... ♖h5!? - Baumbach; 6 ... ♖fd7!? - Euwe) when:

b1) 7 ♖xe4 'recovers the pawn but leads to an inferior position for White as he has no compensation for the ♖-side weakness' as Medniš said. Tartakower-Simonovic, Paris 1954, continued 7 ... e6 8 c4 ♖e7! (not 8 ... ♖b4+? 9 ♖e2! trapping a piece) 9 ♖g3 ♖bc6 10 ♖e3 ♖f5 11 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 12 ♖h3 ♖xh3 13 ♖xh3 and now either 13 ... ♖e7 as played or 13 ... ♖e7! (Diemer) would be

strong.

b2) 7 ♖g2 (Peters) and 7 fe (Kampars) have also been tried, but cannot hope to alter the fundamental drawbacks of White's game.



6 ... h5

Two cautionary tales:

a) Elgstrand-Honfi, Candidates, ½-final World Corres Ch 1959: 6 ... h6!? ('unclear' - ECO) 7 ♖h3! c6 (7 ... ef 8 ♖xf3 ♖c6? 9 ♖b5 Weissleder-Svensson, *Fernschach* 1971) 8 ♖f4 ♖d6 9 ♖e3 e5 10 ♖xg6 fg 11 de ♖xe5 12 f4 ♖a5 13 g5! hg 14 fg ♖d5 15 ♖g4! ♖d7 16 ♖xe4+ ♖e7 17 0-0-0 0-0-0 18 ♖h3 ♖f5 19 h5! ♖xh5 20 ♖e6 ♖c5 21 ♖f4 ♖d4 22 ♖xg6 ♖xc3 23 bc 1-0.

b) Nilssen-Anderssen, Grenaa 1973: 6 ... ef?! 7 ♖xf3 c6 (7 ... ♖c6 8 ♖b5 - *Informator* 17) 8 h5! ♖xc2 9 ♖h2!? (Diemer gave 9 ♖e2 ♖xd4 10 ♖xc2 ♖g4 11 ♖h2!) 9 ... ♖xd4 10 ♖xc2 ♖xg1 11 ♖g2 ♖d4 12 ♖e3 ♖d8 13 ♖d2 ♖bd7 14 0-0-0 with compensation for the pawns. There followed 14 ... ♖a5 (better 14 ... h6) 15 g5 ♖e5 16 ♖e2 ♖fd7 17 ♖f4 e6 18 ♖e1 f6 19 ♖h3 0-0-0 20 ♖xe6 ♖b4 21 ♖xe5 fe 22 ♖ed1 ♖xc3 23 ♖xd7! ♖xd7 24 ♖xd7

♖b8 25 bc ♖xc3+ 26 ♖c2 ♖e3+ 27 ♖d2 ♖c5+ 28 ♖b2 ♖b5+ 29 ♖b3 a5 30 a4 ♖f1 31 ♖xa5 1-0.

7 g5 ♖d5

If 7 ... ♖fd7 (Müller) White can try 8 ♖xe4 e5 9 ♖e2 (Gunderam) or 8 ♖e2!? (Diemer) rather than 8 fe e5 9 de ♖c6 which Black wants.

8 ♖xe4 e6?!

As Euwe says, a conclusive judgement on the variation must await the testing of his improvement 8 ... c6!? 9 c4 ♖c7 10 ♖h3 ♖d7 11 ♖f4 e5! This may offer Black sufficient counter-chances, but can hardly be called a refutation of the Blackmar-Diemer gambit.

After 8 ... e6 White has several promising continuations:

a) 9 ♖h3 ♖d7 10 c4 ♖5b6 11 ♖f4 ± (Diemer-Asgstrom, Gothenburg 1958) is the line quoted by Euwe.

b) Gunderam suggests 9 c3 ♖bd7 10 ♖d3 e.g.:

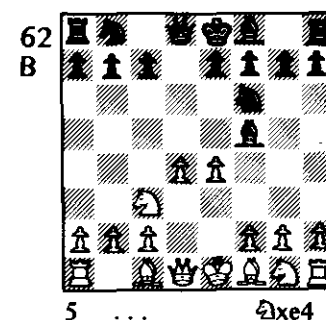
b1) 10 ... c5 11 ♖e2 cd (11 ... ♖c8 12 0-0 or 11 ... ♖e7 12 ♖c2) 12 ♖xd4 e5 (12 ... ♖e5 13 ♖b5+) 13 ♖b5 ♖b6 14 a4 ♖e3 15 ♖e2, or b2) 10 ... e5 11 ♖b3 ♖7b6 12 ♖e2 intending ♖d2 and c4.

c) 9 ♖c4 (9 a3!? - Diemer) 9 ... ♖b6? 10 ♖b3 ♖c6 11 c3 ♖d6 12 ♖e2 0-0 is an example of what Black should avoid. White has a decisive attack: 13 ♖xf4 ♖xe4 14 fe g6 15 e5 ♖e7 16 ♖xh5! gh? (16 ... ♖xe5 17 de ♖xd1+ 18 ♖xd1 ±) 17 ♖xh5 ♖xd4 18 g6! ♖f3+ 19 ♖e2! fg 20 ♖xg6+ ♖h8 21 ♖h6+ ♖g8 22 ♖xe6+ ♖f7 23 ♖g6+ ♖h8 24 ♖xf7 ♖f8 25 ♖g8 mate.

A2

5 fe(62)

Diemer's preferred method. It seems less dangerous to Black, however.



5 ... ♖xe4

Not 5 ... ♖xe4 6 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 7 ♖f3 ♖d6 (7 ... ♖xd4? 8 c3 ♖e5 9 ♖f4 ♖e6 10 0-0-0) 8 ♖f4 ♖c6 (8 ... c6 9 0-0-0; 8 ... ♖d7!?) 9 ♖d3! ♖xd4 10 ♖f2 ♖c6 11 0-0-0 ± Diemer-Keller, Villingen 1938.

6 ♖f3 ♖d6

Or 6 ... ♖xc3 when:

a) 7 bc ♖c8 8 ♖d3 ♖xd3 9 cd and now MCO (11th ed.) recommends 9 ... c6 ♢ Hoey-Lyon, US Forces Ch 1970. Black's plan is ... ♖e6+ followed by ... ♖d5, or if 10 ♖e2 then 10 ... ♖d7 11 0-0 ♖f6 12 ♖g5 ♖e6 13 ♖f4 ♖f5 and White cannot justify his pawn sacrifice.

b) 7 ♖xf5 ♖d5 (7 ... e6 8 ♖f3 ♖h4+ 9 g3 ♖e4+ 10 ♖e2! ± Seidall-Morozov, W.Germany-USSR corres 1959-60) and now Diemer recommends 8 a3 (e.g. 8 ... e6 9 ♖d3 and 10 ♖f3) to improve on 8 c4?! e6 (and 9 ... ♖b4+) or 8 ♖g5 h6 9 ♖h3 against which A. van der Tak's 9 ... hg 10 ♖xh8 ♖e3 seems

strong.

7 $\Delta f4$ e6

Euwe used to recommend 7 ... $\Delta c8$ but now acknowledges that Black has problems after 8 $\Delta xd6!$ cd (8 ... ed 9 0-0-0) 9 $\Delta b5+$ $\Delta d7$ 10 $\Delta ge2!$ as in Focke-Mulherr, 1958.

8 0-0-0 c6

Strobl-Unzicker, Graz 1970, went instead 8 ... $\Delta d7$ 9 g4 $\Delta g6$ 10 $\Delta e3$ $\Delta e7$ 11 $\Delta f3$ f6!? (Unzicker lost an earlier game with 11 ... 0-0 12 h4 h5 13 $\Delta e5$.) 12 $\Delta xe6$ $\Delta f7$ 13 $\Delta e3$ 0-0 14 h4 $\Delta b6$ 15 d5 $\Delta e8 \pm$.

9 g4

MCO only considers 9 d5 cd (9 ... $\Delta e7$ 10 de $\Delta xe6$ 11 $\Delta e4+$) 10 $\Delta xd5$ $\Delta e4$ 11 $\Delta e3$ ed 12 $\Delta xd5$ $\Delta e7$ (or 12 ... f5) 13 $\Delta b5+$ $\Delta c6$ 14 $\Delta xc6+$ bc 15 $\Delta xd6$ $\Delta xd6$ 16 $\Delta xe4+$ $\Delta f8$ 17 $\Delta f3$ $\Delta xf4+$ 18 $\Delta xf4$ $\Delta f6$ 19 $\Delta b4+$ $\Delta e7 \mp$ - Diemer, Gunderam and Müller.

9 ... $\Delta g6$

10 $\Delta e3$

Here Black has:

a) 10 ... $\Delta d7?$ 11 d5 cd 12 $\Delta xd5!$ $\Delta c7$ 13 $\Delta d2!$ a6 14 $\Delta g3$ e5 15 $\Delta xe5$ $\Delta xe5$ 16 $\Delta d5!$ $\pm$ - Hall.

b) 10 ... $\Delta e7$ is critical, as Hall said in *Chess* 459-460. Can 11 d5!? (Rasa-Haase, Dunedin 1963) be sound after 11 ... cd, or should White first play Diemer's 11 $\Delta f3$ (hoping for 11 ... $\Delta d7$ 12 d5!)? The piece sacrifice on d5 is always in the air, but possibly Black can deal with it.

B

4 ... ef

In view of the problems White is

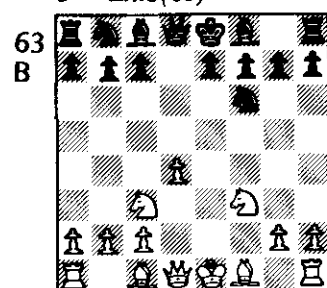
able to create for his opponent in Müller's Defence, it seems best to accept the gambit. Now:

B1 5 $\Delta xf3$

B2 5 $\Delta xf3?$!

B1

5 $\Delta xf3$ (63)



B11 5 ... $\Delta f5$

B12 5 ... g6

Others are inferior:

a) 5 ... $\Delta g4$ (Teichmann) 6 h3 (6 $\Delta c4!$?; 6 $\Delta e2!$? is also possible) and now:

a1) 6 ... $\Delta h5$ 7 g4! $\Delta g6$ 8 $\Delta e5$ ($\pm$ - Euwe) or 8 $\Delta c4$ e6 9 $\Delta e2$ Hall-Nolte, Blackmar-Diemer World corres final.

a2) 6 ... $\Delta xf3$ 7 $\Delta xf3$ c6 (7 ... $\Delta xd4?$ 8 $\Delta xb7$) 8 $\Delta e3$ e6 (8 ... $\Delta bd7$ 9 0-0-0 $\Delta b6$ 10 d5! $\pm$ - Diemer) 9 $\Delta d3$ $\Delta bd7$ (9 ... $\Delta d6!$? - Rhodes) 10 0-0 (10 0-0-0 failed in G.Müller-Danner, Blackmar-Diemer thematic corres final) 10 ... $\Delta e7$ 11 $\Delta f2$ (11 g4!? - Diemer) 11 ... $\Delta a5$ 12 0-0 is said to be = by MCO and ECO.

Compare this with the continuation of Diemer-Gereben, Zwole 1959: 13 $\Delta f1$ h6 (13 ... e5 14 g5 $\Delta d5$ 15 $\Delta f5$) 14 h4 c5 15 g5 hg 16 hg cd 17 $\Delta h3!$ de 18 $\Delta g2$ $\Delta f8$

19 gf $\Delta f6$ 20 $\Delta h6$ g6 21 $\Delta xg6$ 1-0.

b) 5 ... e6 (too passive) 6 $\Delta g5$ (6 $\Delta d3$ is also playable.) 6 ... $\Delta e7$ (6 ... c5 7 d5 a6! - Euwe; or 7 $\Delta xf6!$ - Hall) 7 $\Delta d2$ (7 $\Delta d3$ is still strong.) 7 ... 0-0 8 $\Delta d3$ $\Delta bd7$ 9 $\Delta f4$ b6 10 $\Delta h4$ $\Delta e8$ 11 $\Delta e5!$ with a dangerous attack; Diemer-R.Fuller, Hastings Challengers 1957, continued 11 ... $\Delta f8$ 12 $\Delta c6$ $\Delta d6$ 13 $\Delta xe7+$ $\Delta xe7$ 14 0-0 $\Delta g6$ 15 $\Delta xg6$ fg 16 $\Delta e4$ $\Delta f8$ 17 $\Delta xf6$ gf 18 $\Delta xf6$ $\Delta xf6$ 19 $\Delta xf6+$ $\Delta h8$ 20 $\Delta e4$ $\Delta b8$ 21 $\Delta f1$ $\Delta b7$ 22 $\Delta e5$ $\Delta d6$ 23 $\Delta e8+$! 1-0.

c) 5 ... c5 6 d5 g6 is a variant of B12. After 7 $\Delta f4$ a6 8 a4 $\Delta g7$ (Diemer-Bogoljubow, Constance 1948) White can obtain compensation for the pawn by 9 $\Delta c4$ 0-0 10 0-0 - Diemer. This needs tests.

B11

5 ... $\Delta f5$

This natural developing move contests White's initiative. It was suggested by Tartakower.

6 $\Delta e5!$?

White feels the need for early complications to justify his pawn sacrifice. Against other moves Black is able to consolidate by plans which are not hard to find, for example:

a) 6 $\Delta c4$ e6 7 0-0 $\Delta bd7$ 8 $\Delta e2$ c6 when:

a1) 9 $\Delta e5$ $\Delta xe5$ 10 de can be countered by 10 ... $\Delta d4+$ 11 $\Delta h1$ $\Delta e4 \mp$ (Hall) or 10 ... $\Delta d7 \mp$ Elgstrand-Lim Hong Gie, 1/2-final 4th World Corres Ch 1959-61.

a2) 9 $\Delta g5$ $\Delta e7$ 10 $\Delta ad1$ $\Delta c7$ with a flexible, Caro-Kann type of

position - and an extra pawn! Not now 11 $\Delta e5?$ because of 11 ... $\Delta xe5$ 12 de $\Delta g4$ 13 $\Delta f2$ $\Delta xe5 \mp$. b) 6 $\Delta d3$ $\Delta xd3$ 7 $\Delta xd3$ $\Delta bd7$ allows Black to choose between ... e6 or ... g6-based development plans, with a ... c5 or ... e5 freeing move when king safety has been achieved. The exchange of bishops reduces White's attacking prospects and Black's position has no weaknesses.

c) 6 $\Delta g5$ (and maybe 6 $\Delta h4!$? $\Delta g6$ 7 $\Delta xg6$) offer White some scope for complicating the position. Black should, however, be safe with the same simple development as in notes a and b.

6 ... e6

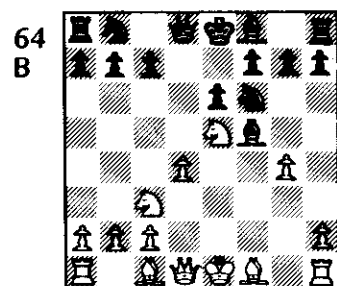
The analyst G.Gunderam proposed 6 ... h5?! (to forestall g4) but White then seizes the initiative by 7 $\Delta f3!$ $\Delta c8$ 8 $\Delta c4$ e6 9 $\Delta g5$ and has good compensation for the sacrificed pawn. The plausible 9 ... $\Delta e7$ is answered by 10 $\Delta xf7!$ $\Delta g4$ 11 $\Delta d3$ $\Delta xf7$ 12 h3 as given by the U.S. master, Ken Smith.

7 g4(64)

This cut-throat continuation is almost always played.

A postal game Marwardt-Poschk, 1963, went instead 7 $\Delta f3!$? c6 8 $\Delta e3$ $\Delta bd7$ 9 0-0-0 with chances for both sides. Black could attempt a direct refutation by 7 ... $\Delta xd4$ 8 $\Delta xb7$ $\Delta xe5+$ 9 $\Delta e2$ $\Delta e4 \infty$, e.g. 10 $\Delta xe4$ $\Delta xe4$ 11 $\Delta c8+$ $\Delta e7$ 12 $\Delta xc7+$ $\Delta bd7$ 13 b3 $\Delta d5$ 14 $\Delta a3+$ $\Delta e8$ 15 $\Delta b7$ $\Delta c3 \mp$.

There are now two distinct lines:



B111 7 ... ♖e4!?

B112 7 ... ♗g6

B111

7 ... ♖e4!?

Black goes for an immediate counter-attack.

8 ♖b5+!

The only move that is any good.

Others:

a) 8 ♗f3? ♗xd4! (not 8 ... ♗h4+? 9 ♖e2!) ♠.

b) 8 h4? ♗xc3 9 bc ♖e4 ♠.

c) 8 gf? ♗h4+ 9 ♖e2 ♗f2+ 10 ♖d3 ♖c5+ 11 dc (11 ♖c4 a6 ♠ Diemer-Gunderam, corres 1958-59) 11 ... ♖a6 12 ♖e3 (or 12 ♖e4 0-0-0+ 13 ♖c3 ♗xf5) 12 ... ♖d8+ 13 ♖c4 ♗xe3 14 ♗xd8+ (14 ♖d3 ♖d4+ leads to mate.) 14 ... ♗xd8 15 ♖xf7+ ♖c8 16 ♖xh8 ♗f4+ ♠ Peilen-Kampars, Blackmar-Diemer thematic corres tournament 1968-69.

8 ... ♖c6

9 0-0 ♗xc3

10 bc ♗g6

11 ♖d3

If 11 ♖xg6 hg 12 ♗f3 ♗c7 13 ♖f4 then 13 ... ♖d6! poses White awkward problems, Seidel-

Gunderam, corres 1963-64.

11 ... ♖d6

12 ♖xg6!

If 12 ♖xg6 hg 13 ♖f2 ♗h4 14 ♗e2 ♖d7 Black's chances are preferable. Euwe gives 15 ♖b1 ♖b8 16 ♖xg6 0-0! but 15 ... 0-0-0 may be even better (16 ♖xf7? ♖xh2+). White can try 15 ♖xg6!? but the endgame after 15 ... ♖xh2+! 16 ♖xh2 ♗xh2+ 17 ♗xh2 ♖xh2 18 ♖xf7+ ♗xf7 19 ♗xh2 e5! is very poor by contrast with the one reached by the text move.

After 12 ♖xg6 Burger-Holzvoigt, 6th German Cup corres, went 12 ... hg 13 ♖xf7 ♖xh2+ 14 ♖g2 ♗d5+ 15 ♗f3! (improving on Gunderam's 15 ♖f3 0-0 16 c4 ♗xc4 ♠) 15 ... ♖f8 16 ♗xd5 ed 17 ♖a3! ♖xf7 18 ♖xf7 ♗f7 19 ♖f1+! This move guarantees that the white rook will reach the 7th rank, causing Black problems.

The game continued 19 ... ♗e8 (19 ... ♗e6 20 ♖e1+ ♗f6 may be somewhat better) 20 ♖f8+ ♖d7 21 ♗xh2 ♖c7 22 ♖g3 a5 23 ♖c1! b5 24 ♖f4+ ♖b7 25 ♖xb8+ with a winning ♖ and pawn ending.

B112

7 ... ♗g6

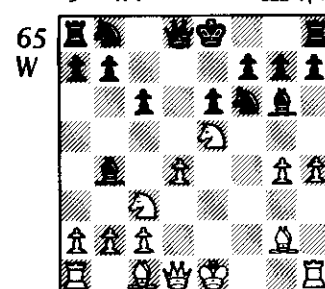
Black prefers to continue relying on natural moves.

8 ♗g2

8 h4 ♖b4 9 ♗g2 c6 transposes. In this line White leaves his ♖-side wide open and makes many pawn moves - offences against the first principles. Of course Black still has to prove a refutation!

On the other hand, 8 ♗f3!? c6 (8 ... ♗xd4!? again) 9 g5 (or 9 ♖e3 ♖b4 10 ♖d3 ♖bd7 11 ♖xg6 hg - Gunderam) 9 ... ♖g8 10 ♖e3 ♖d7 11 h4 ♖d7 12 h5 ♖xe5 13 de ♖xc2 (Euwe) hardly seems to offer White any compensation for the two lost pawns.

8 ... ♖c6
9 h4 ♖b4(65)



10 0-0!?

White has also tried:

a) 10 ♖g5 ♗a5 11 ♖d2 ♖xc3? (but 11 ... ♖bd7 12 a3 ♖xc3 gains a tempo - Gunderam) 12 ♖xc3 ♗c7 13 ♗e2 with compensation thanks to the two bishops (1-0, 28) Snejders-Fogel, corres 1965.

b) 10 h5 (Lagland-Fernandez, corres 1973-74) 10 ... ♖e4 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 12 ♗f3 ♖d6 13 0-0 0-0 - Gunderam. White's ♖-side looks exceedingly porous and he is still a pawn down. His nebulous tactical chances should not be sufficient compensation.

10 ... ♖bd7

10 ... ♖xc3 11 bc 0-0 also comes into consideration.

11 ♖xd7

If 11 h5? (or 11 g5 ♖h5! ♠ -

Pachman) 11 ... ♖xe5! 12 de ♖c5+ 13 ♗h1 ♗xd1 14 ♖xd1 ♖xg4! ♠ Nicolaisen-Gjerdrum, corres.

11 ... ♗xd7

12 h5 ♖xc3

13 bc ♖e4

14 h6 ♖xg2

15 hg ♖g8

16 ♖xf6

The German postal player Groth recommended 16 ♖xg2 in *Fernschach* 1972/9; e.g.:

a) 16 ... ♖d5 17 c4 ♖e7 (17 ... ♖b6 18 c5) 18 ♗f3 (or 18 ♖h6) 18 ... ♖g6 19 ♖h6 and White has the initiative.

b) 16 ... ♖e4 (16 ... ♗d5+ 17 ♗h3! ♖e4 18 ♖h6) 17 ♗f3 ♖d6 18 ♖h6 intending ♗d3.

c) However, I think that the shady side of White's position may be exploited by 16 ... ♖e4! 17 ♗f3 f5! supporting the ♖ on its strong square. Then if 18 ♖h6 0-0-0 19 ♖b1 ♖xg7! with a powerful counter-attack, whilst the endgame after 18 gf ♖xg7+ 19 ♗h2 ef 20 ♗xf5 (or 20 ♗h5+ ♗f7) 20 ... ♗xf5 21 ♖xf5 ♖xc3 (or 21 ... 0-0-0) is clearly in Black's favour.

16 ... ♗e7! ♠

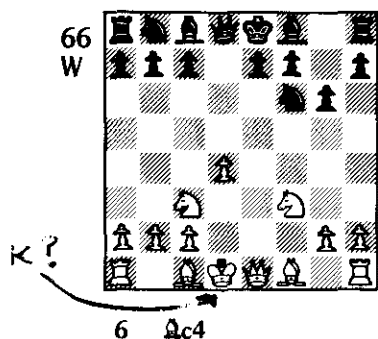
This is more active than 16 ... ♖e4 17 ♗e2 ♖g6 18 ♖h6 ♗d6 19 ♗f2 0-0-0 20 ♖f4 ♗d5 ∞ (1-0, 33) Diemer-Witte, BDG-World corres 1968-69.

After 16 ... ♗e7 Engler-Groth, German corres, went 17 ♖f2 ♖d5 18 ♖f4 (18 ♖h6? ♗h4) 18 ... ♖xg7 19 ♖h2 f5 20 g5 ♖xg5+! 21 ♖xg5 ♗xg5+ 22 ♗f1 0-0-0 23 ♗e2 ♖g8

24 ♖f2 ♖c4+ 25 ♖e1 ♗g1+ 26 ♗d2 ♗xa1 27 ♖xh7 ♗f1 28 ♗xf1 ♖xf1 0-1. There is still scope for new invention but B112 seems to vindicate the Tartakower-Gunderam Defence.

B12 5 ... g6(66)

Bogoljubow's Defence, in which Black fianchettoes his king's bishop and aims for a solid position. White has no immediate threats to meet, so he can adopt any of several development schemes.



This is almost invariably chosen. Others:

a) 6 ♖g5!? ♖g7 7 ♗d2 h6 (7 ... 0-0 compare note b) 8 ♖e3 ♗bd7 9 0-0-0 ♗b6 10 ♗e5 c6 11 ♖e2 ♗bd5 12 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 13 ♖f2 intending with pressure; Pape-Fechner, final, Blackmar-Diemer international thematic corres.
b) 6 ♖f4 ♖g7 7 ♗d2 0-0 8 0-0-0 (8 ♖c4!? - Diemer) 8 ... c5:
b1) 9 d5? a6 10 a4 b5 11 ab ab 12 ♖xb5 ♗e4 13 ♗e2 ♖xc3 14 bc ♖xc3 15 ♗d2 ♖a1+ 16 ♗b1 ♗a5 0-1 French-Teiler, corres 1967.

b2) 9 ♗b5!? (Tejler, Hall) 9 ... ♗a6! (common sense) and Black stands well.

6 ... ♖g7

Now:

B121 7 0-0

B122 7 ♖g5

B123 7 ♗e5

Also:

a) 7 ♗e2!? 0-0 8 ♖g5 ♖g4 9 0-0-0 (Gunderam) ∞.

b) 7 ♖f4 c6? 8 ♗d2 ♗bd7 9 ♖xf7+ ♗xf7 10 ♖g5+ ♗g8 11 ♗e6 ♗a5 12 0-0 ♗f8 13 ♗c7 ♖b8 14 ♖ae1 e6 15 ♖e5 ♗bd7 16 ♗d3d5!! 1-0 (Roos-Fechner, final, Blackmar-Diemer thematic corres) shows how things can go wrong for Black even in this defence, if he neglects basic precautions such as castling.

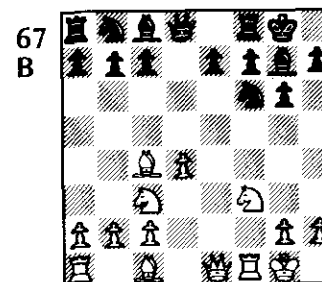
B121 7 0-0 0-0
8 ♗e1(67)

The Studier Attack. Others:

a) 8 ♗e5? ♗c6! 9 ♖xc6 bc when:
a1) 10 h3 ♗h5 (or 10 ... ♗d5 11 ♖b3 ♖a6 ♢ *Schach-Echo* 6/1953) 11 ♗e2 e5! 12 g4 ♗h4! ♢ Diemer-Niephaus, Freiburg 1951.
a2) 10 ♖f4 ♖fg4 11 d5 e5! 12 de ♗d4+! (0-1, 37) Diemer-Wolk, 5th match game 1951.
b) 8 ♖g5 c5 9 d5 h6 10 ♖h4 ♗e8! allows Black to consolidate his extra pawn; Diemer-Kloss, corres.
c) 8 ♖f4 or 8 ♗h1 (preparing ♖e3) have not been much studied. They should not be any better.

8 ... ♗bd7!

Not considered by Euwe. Most books give 8 ... ♗c6!? as the best



defence, e.g. 9 ♗h4 and now:

a) 9 ... ♖g4 (Brinckmann, Euwe) 10 h3! ♖xd4+ 11 ♗h1 ♖f6 12 ♖g5 h6 13 ♖xf7 ♗d4 14 ♖xf6 ef 15 ♖xh6+ ♗g7 16 ♖xg4 ♗xc4 17 ♖h6+ ♗f7 18 ♗xf6+ ♗e8 19 ♗xf8+ ♗d7 20 ♖d1+ 1-0 Studier-Hallier, Freiburg 1959.

b) 9 ... ♖g4 10 ♖e3 ♖xf3 (10 ... ♗d7 11 ♗e5) 11 ♖xf3 is critical:

b1) 11 ... h6 12 ♖ad1 (Zevers-Fritts, USA corres 1964-65) 12 ... ♗h7 and if 13 ♖xh6 ♖xh6 14 ♖h3 ♖g8 - Euwe.

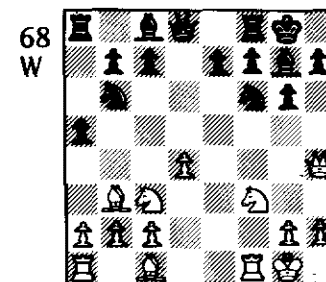
b2) 11 ... e6 (Gunderam) e.g. 12 ♖af1 ♗d5 13 ♖g5 ♖xd4+ 14 ♗h1 f6 15 ♗e4 ♗ce7 (Duthilleul-Griesmann, Bordeaux 1958) 16 c3!? is unclear.

b3) 11 ... e5 12 d5 ♗d4 13 ♖xd4 ed 14 ♗xd4 ♗e8 = Brinckmann, Euwe.

9 ♗h4 ♗b6
10 ♖b3 a5(68)

Pachman gives this as favourite for Black. Too optimistic? This position was discussed by D.J. Rogers in *Correspondence Chess* 52/1976. White can try:

a) 11 ♖h6 a4 12 ♖g5 ab 13 ♖xg7 ♗xg7 14 ♖xf6 h6 15 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7



16 ♗xh6+ ♗xh6 17 ♖xf7+ ♗g7 18 ♖xd8 bc and Black seems to be winning, e.g. 19 ♖f1? ♖g4! or 19 ♖c1 c6 20 ♖xc2 ♖b8! (Rogers) or 19 d5 ♖f5!? 20 ♖xb7? ♖xd5 21 ♖xd5 ♖xa2 22 ♖c1 ♖xb2 23 ♖f4 ♖b1 24 ♗e2 ♖d3 ♢ - Harding.

b) 11 a4 and now:

b1) 11 ... ♖g4 12 ♗e2 (12 h3 ♖f6 13 ♖h6 looks promising.) 12 ... ♗d5 13 c3 ♖f6! 14 ♖g5 ♗de3 ♢ Hayden-Rogers, corres 1975.

b2) 11 ... ♗bd5!? was rejected by Rogers on account of 12 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 13 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 14 ♗xe7 (14 ... ♖xd4+? 15 ♖xd4 ♗xd4+ 16 ♗h1 threatening ♖h6). However, 14 ... ♗c6! 15 c3 (15 ♖f4 ♖f5! ♢) 15 ... ♖e6 16 ♖f4 ♖ac8 17 ♗e5!? ♗d5 seems to leave chances approximately equal. This deserves further investigation, as does:

b3) 11 ... ♖g4!? - Pachman.

B12 7 ♖g5 0-0

Or 7 ... ♗bd7 8 ♗d2 c6 9 h3 b5 10 ♖d3 a6 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♖h6 ♗b6 13 ♖ae1 ♖e6 14 ♗e4 ♖xe4 15 ♖xe4 ♗c4 16 ♗c1 ♖d5 17 c3 ♗d6 18 ♖b1 f6 19 ♗h2 ♖xh6 20 ♗xh6

Qf7 21 Wh4 Qg7 22 Qg4 Qd6 23 Be3 Bae8 = Soller-Heuer, Switzerland 1959 (1-0, 46). This type of position offers White some positional compensation but it took Black several errors to lose.

8 Qd2

This contrasts with the We1-h4 manoeuvre characteristic of the Studier Attack. White in effect plays as if he were not a pawn down - the right policy against the Bogojubow Defence.

8 ... a6

Others:

a) 8 ... c5!?, suggested in Richter and Teschner's book, *Schach-Eröffnungen*, led to an unclear position after 9 d5 Qbd7 10 a4 Qb6 11 Qa2 Qf5 12 0-0 in Stock-Pape, final, Blackmar-Diemer thematic corres tournament.

b) 8 ... Qg4 9 Qe5 Qf5 10 0-0-0 Qbd7 11 Qf4 Qb6 (Stock-Fechner, same event) 12 Qb3 a5! 13 g4 Qc8! I think Black has better chances on the Q-wing than White has on the Q-wing.

9 a4 Qf5

10 0-0 Qc6

Richter and Teschner prefer 10 ... Qbd7 with the idea that if 11 Qh6 then 11 ... e6!

11 Qad1 Qe4

12 Qxe4 Qxe4

13 Qh6 Qd5

If 13 ... Qxf3 14 Qxg7 Qxd1 15 Qxf8 Qxd4+ 16 Qxd4 Qxd4 17 Qxe7 White has a favourable ending.

14 Qxg7 Qxg7

Not 14 ... Qxc4? 15 Qh6! with the threat of Qg5.

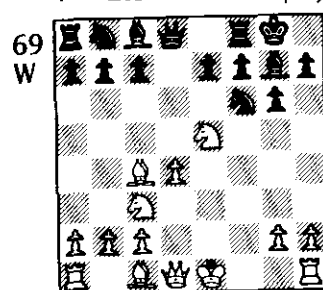
15 Qe2 Qd6

16 c4 Qxf3

17 Qxf3 Qad8 18 d5 Qc5+ (18 ... h6! 19 Qh3 g5 or 19 Qc3+ Qe5 20 Qe3 f6 - Richter and Teschner) 19 Qh1 Qb4 20 Qe3 Qa5 21 Qh3 Qh8 22 Qf1 Qxb2? 23 Qxe7 Qh8 (23 ... Qdf8 24 Qhf3!) 24 Qh4 Qh8 25 Qxf7+! Qxf7 26 Qf3+ 1-0 Diemer-Vetter, Rastatt 1953.

B123

7 Qe5 0-0(69)



8 Qg5

Also worthy of consideration are:

a) 8 Qe2!? ∞.

b) 8 Qf4 (perhaps best) when:

b1) 8 ... Qbd7 9 0-0 Qh5? 10 Qxf7! Qxf7 11 Qxf7+ Qxf7 12 Qxc7+.

b2) 8 ... e6 9 Qd2 Qd5 10 Qxd5 ed 11 0-0-0 Qe6 12 h4 h5? (12 ... Qd7 is critical.) 13 g4! Qxe5 14 de Qxg4 15 Qg5 Qe8 16 Qxd5 Qe6 17 Qe7 Qd7 18 Qh6 Qxe5 19 Qxf8 Qxf8 20 Qhe1 1-0 Bohnke-Engel, corres.

8 ... Qbd7

Also possible is 8 ... Qc6 e.g. 9 Qxc6 bc 10 Qd2 Qd5 (Heil-Bogoljubow, Wangen 1962) and now 11 0-0-0! (Diemer) is only

about equal (MCO 10).

9 0-0 c5!

Black reacts vigorously. Others:

a) 9 ... c6 (Nievergelt; ≠ ECO) 10 Qb3! (Diemer) and as Horowitz says, White has excellent prospects. Not 10 ... Qxe5 (10 ... Qb6 see b) 11 de Qb6+ 12 Qh1 Qg4 because of 13 e6 Qf2+ 14 Qxf2 Qxf2 15 ef+ Qxf7 16 Qd8+ Qf8 17 Qe4! (17 Qh6 Qh3!) 17 ... Qf5 18 Qg3 Qxg5 19 Qxf7+ Qxf7 20 Qf1+ ± - Euwe. b) 9 ... Qb6 10 Qb3 c6 11 Qd2 Qbd5 (11 ... a5? 12 a4 Qbd5 13 Qae1 Qxc3 14 bc c5 15 Qe3! Kaulich-Klenke, corres) 12 Qae1 (Diemer-Suttrerer, Rastatt 1952) and now 11 ... Qe6 (Euwe) is critical.

10 Qxd7 Qxd7!

Horowitz suggested 10 ... Qxd7 11 dc Qc7 = (12 b4 Qf6), but this is untested.

11 d5 Qg4

Here White has:

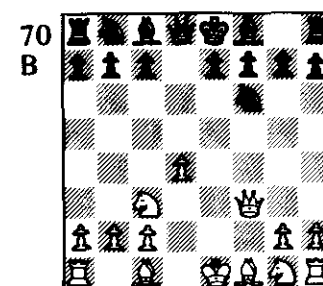
a) 12 h3 Qe5! 13 Qb5 Qc7 14 d6 and now the exchange offer 14 ... Qxd6! 15 Qxd6 ed 16 Qe7 Qe6 gives Black at least equality - Diemer, Euwe.

b) 12 Qe1 Qd6 13 Wh4 (or 13 Qf4 e5 - Euwe) 13 ... f6 14 Qf4 e5 15 Qd2 (15 Qe4 Qd8) 15 ... f5 16 h3 Qf6 17 Qb5 Qd8 18 d6+ Qh8 19 Qg5 a6 20 Qc7 Qb8 and Black has a tenable position - Kloss in *Fernschach* 1954. Diemer supports his assessment with the sample continuation 21 Qad1 b5 22 Qe6 Qb6 23 Qxc8 Qxc8 24 Qd5 Qxd5 25 Qxd5 Qd7! (26 Qe7 Qfc8).

B2

5 Qxf3!?(70)

It is sometimes claimed that this move, the subject of Diemer's book *Vom Ersten Zug An Auf Matt* ('Towards mate from move one') is stronger than the recapture with the knight. It has certainly been less analysed than 5 Qxf3 but its soundness is more debatable.



White leaves a second tempting pawn en prise, but if Black declines it then where is the white king's knight to be developed?

5 ... g6!

Bogoljubow's Defence is clearly best here, I think.

Others:

a) 5 ... Qxd4 is given as the refutation by both Euwe and Pachman, but matters are not so clear after:

a1) 6 Qf4 (intending 7 Qb5) - Bagirov, ECO.

a2) Not 6 Qd3? Qg4 7 Qf2 e5 8 Qf3 Qb4 ≠ - Pachman.

a3) If 6 Qe3! then:

a31) 6 ... Qb4? 7 0-0-0 Qg4?! 8 Qb5! ± is a famous trap.

a32) 6 ... Qg4 7 Qf2 e5 is critical (not 7 ... Qb4? 8 0-0-0 Qg4 9 Qd5!

♘a5 10 ♗e1! ± Diemer), e.g. 8 ♖d3 e4 (or 8 ... ♖b4 9 ♖ge2 ♠ 10 0-0-0 - Diemer) 9 ♖c4 ♗f5 10 ♗g3 c6 11 ♖h3. This line has occurred in a few postal games and deserves more testing.

b) 5 ... c6 6 ♖d3 (6 ♖e3!? - ECO) when:

b1) 6 ... ♗xd4 7 ♖e3 ♗g4 8 ♗f2 e5 9 h3 ♗h5 10 ♖ge2 ♖d6 11 0-0-0 (♠ 12 g4) 11 ... e4 12 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 13 ♖xe4 ♖e7 14 ♖f4 ♗a5 15 ♗g3 0-0 16 ♖d5!! cd 17 ♖h5 g6 18 ♖hf6+ ♖xf6 19 ♖xf6+ ♗g7 20 ♗e5 ♗h8 21 ♖h6 ♖c6 22 ♖g7+! ♗xg7 23 ♖e8+ ♗h6 24 ♗f4+ g5 25 ♗f6+ ♗h5 26 ♖g7+ 1-0 Mabbis-L. Alexander, London 1961.

b2) 6 ... ♖g4 7 ♗f2 e6 8 h3 ♖h5 9 ♖ge2 ♖bd7 10 0-0 ♖e7 11 g4 ♖g6 12 g5! ♗a5 (12 ... ♖xd3 13 gf ♖xe2 14 fg) 13 gf gf 14 ♖f4 0-0-0 15 ♖d2 ♗g5+ 16 ♗h1 ♗h6 17 ♗h2! ♗h4 (17 ... ♖xd3 18 ♖e6! ♖d6 19 ♖xh6 ♖xh2 20 ♖xd8 ♖xf1 21 ♖xf7) 18 ♖fg1 f5 19 b4 e5 20 b5!! ef 21 bc ♖b6 22 cb+ ♗xb7 23 ♖f4 ♖d6 24 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 25 ♗xd6 ♖h5 26 ♗g3 1-0 (Honfi-Füster, Hungarian Ch 1950) is that rarity - a Blackmar-Diemer between two players of genuine IM strength, and won by White at that.

6 ♖f4

Or 6 ♖d3 ♖g7 7 ♖ge2 0-0 8 ♖f4 ♖c6 9 0-0-0 transposing.

6 ... ♖g7

7 0-0-0

Diemer has also experimented with 7 ♖b5!? ♖a6 and now 8 ♖ge2 or 8 0-0-0.

7 ... 0-0

8 ♖d3

If 8 ♖c4 ♖bd7! (8 ... ♖c6 9 d5) 9 ♖ge2 (or 9 ♖b5 ♖e8 10 ♗g3 ♖d6) 9 ... ♖b6 10 ♖b3 a5 intending ... ♖g4 and/or ... ♖bd5 - analysis.

8 ... ♖c6!

Diemer-Burger, 1950, went instead 8 ... ♖bd7 (8 ... ♖g4? 9 ♗xb7) 9 g4! c5 10 h4! cd 11 h5 dc 12 g5 cb+ 13 ♗b1 ♖b6 14 gf ♖xf6 15 hg ♖a4 16 gf+ winning the queen. Another Diemer game went 8 ... c6 9 ♖ge2 ♖e6 10 h4 ♖d5 11 h5! etc.

9 ♖ge2 ♖g4

10 ♗f2 ♖b4

11 ♖c4 c6

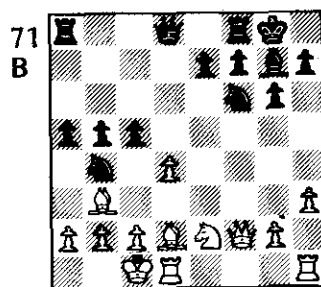
12 h3 ♖xe2

13 ♖xe2 b5

14 ♖b3 a5

15 ♖d2(71)

Or 15 c3 a4 16 a3 ab 17 cb ♖d5 ♠ Oscarsson-Hornstein, ½-final 4th Corres World Ch 1959-61.



Black is probably winning. Two examples:

a) 15 ... a4!? 16 ♖xb4? ab 17 a3 ♖h5+ 18 ♗b1 bc+ 19 ♗xc2 ♖d5! 20 ♗h4! ♖g7 21 ♖c5 ♖e3+ 22 ♗c1 ♖f6 23 ♗e4 ♖xd1 24 ♖xd1 ♗d5 25

♗xd5! cd 26 ♖c3 ♖fb8 27 ♖xd5 ♖g5+ 28 ♗b1 ♖b7! 29 ♖d3 e6 30 ♖c3 f5 31 ♗a2 ♖d8 32 ♗b3 e5 33 d5 e4 34 ♖d1 ♖f6 35 ♗b4 ♖xc3 36 ♗xc3 ♖bd7 37 d6 ♗f7 38 ♖d4 ♗e6 39 a4 ♖c8 40 b4 ba 41 ♗c4 a3 42 ♖d2 ♖a8 43 ♖a2 ♖xd6 44 ♖xd6 ♗xd6 and Black won; Diemer-Bogoljubow, South Baden Ch 1949. However, White may be able to get away with 16 ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 17 ♖xb4 ♖d5 18 ♗e1 e.g. 18 ... ♖e3 19 ♖d3 ♖xg2? 20 ♗g3. Therefore, when I reached the diagram position in a postal game, I played instead:

b) 15 ... ♖bd5 16 ♖g3 a4 17 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 ♠ Now Micklethwaite-Harding, corres 1974-75, continued 18 h4 (possibly 18 ♗b1) 18 ... b4 19 h5 b3 20 cb ab 21 a3 ♗b6 22 ♖e2 ♖xa3?! (22 ... c5! is less flamboyant, but more accurate.) 23 ba ♗a6 24 ♗b2? (24 ♖c3! might be a refutation.) 24 ... ♗d3 25 ♗a1 ♗c2 0-1.

Conclusion

Black can decline the gambit by Müllers 4 ... ♖f5 but White seems to get adequate tactical chances in A1, and maybe even in A2. Acceptance of the gambit seems best, followed by ... g6 if White captured with the queen. If White plays the superior 5

♖xf3 then the choice is between ... g6 once again, or the more forcing Tartakower-Gunderam Defence, 5 ... ♖f5. If then 6 ♖e5 e6 7 g4 ♖g6! Bear in mind that Bogoljubow is the only world-class player to be involved in Blackmar-Diemer praxis, and that he always preferred plans involving the ♗-side fianchetto for Black. He obtained good results so there seem to be good grounds for following his example. Black after all should be looking for lines that give him winning chances, not for equalizing continuations.

From White's point of view, you are probably not afraid of risk (in fact you probably enjoy it) or else you would not consider playing this gambit. It certainly offers good practical chances of an attacking win and relatively few opponents will feel comfortable against it. The viability of the Blackmar-Diemer in postal chess at sub-master level shows that the correct defences are by no means obvious to everyone.

If you hope to reach a Blackmar-Diemer after 1 d4 ♖f6, you can try 2 ♖c3 (as 2 ... d5 3 e4 ♖xe4 4 ♖xe4 de 5 ♖c4 is good) but 2 ... c5 is often the answer. You are most likely to get what you want via 2 f3!? d5 (2 ... c5 can now lead to a Sämisch King's Indian) 3 e4 de 4 ♖c3. Good hunting!

Index of Complete Games

(*underlined* = player named was White)

L.Alexander	100	Engler	<u>95</u>	Milner-Barry	71
Anderssen	90	Euwe	<u>16</u> , 71	Napolitano	<u>45</u>
Antoshin	<u>68</u>	Fairhurst	<u>43</u>	Nenarokov	<u>83</u>
Aronson	<u>16</u>	Farago	49	Nilssen	<u>90</u>
Bagirov	4	Flohr	37	Nimzowitsch	6
Bernstein	45	Franklin	<u>29</u> , <u>60</u> , <u>61</u>	O'Hanlon	31
Blackburne	12	French	<u>96</u>	O'Kelly	<u>30</u>
Bogoljubow	31	R.Fuller	93	Olafsson	55, 68
Bohnke	<u>98</u>	Füster	100	Platonov	<u>39</u>
Boleslavsky	58, 68	Gerasimov	<u>14</u>	Rakic	<u>4</u> , <u>47</u> , <u>48</u>
Böök	30	Grekov	83	Rantanen	43
Botterill	61	Groth	95	Ree	60
Bronstein	<u>49</u> , <u>54</u>	Gulko	<u>55</u>	Rubinstein	16, <u>38</u>
Buerger	20	Hallier	97	von Scheve	<u>5</u>
Bukhman	<u>70</u>	Harding	101	Schlechter	<u>43</u>
Bukic	1	Honfi	90, <u>100</u>	Schmidt	<u>88</u>
Capablanca	37, 38, 85	Iglitsky	<u>36</u>	Selesniev	<u>42</u>
Carleton	29	Kan	36	Smyslov	14, <u>58</u>
Catala	30	Karpov	39	Sorokin	<u>86</u>
Cederquist	<u>43</u>	Keogh	43	Soultanbeieff	<u>39</u>
Charousek	<u>7</u>	Koltanowski	<u>19</u> , <u>30</u> , <u>37</u>	Spassky	<u>1</u>
Chernev	35	Kopayev	26	Spielmann	19
Ciric	41	Kots	54	Stoltz	18
Chernikov	70	Kottnauer	<u>68</u>	Stolyar	16
Colle	<u>18</u> , <u>20</u> , <u>31</u> , <u>31</u> , <u>35</u> , <u>37</u> , <u>71</u>	Kovacevic	<u>41</u>	Studier	<u>97</u>
Cvetkovic	48	Larsen	<u>55</u>	Suchting	7
Denker	<u>35</u>	Leonhardt	43	Sultan Khan	<u>71</u>
Diemer	<u>93</u> , <u>98</u>	Mabbs	<u>100</u>	Talvik	86
Dunkelblum	39	Marovic	47	Tejler	96
Elgstrand	<u>90</u>	Marshall	5, 42, <u>85</u>	Vaganian	55
Enevoldsen	<u>6</u>	Mattison	35	Vetter	98
Engel	98	Melcher	88	Yasvoin	<u>26</u>
		Micklethwaite	<u>101</u>	Zukertort	<u>12</u>

Index of Variations

Page numbers italicised.

Colle

1 d4 ♢f6 2 ♢f3 Δ e3

2 ... e6 3 e3 d5 4 ♠d3	
4 ... b6 19	
4 ... ♠e7 19	
4 ... ♠d6 20	
4 ... c5 5 b3 12	
4 ... c5 5 c3 ♠c6 6 ♠bd2 ♠d6 23	
6 ... ♠e7 28	
5 ... ♠bd7 6 ♠bd2 ♠d6 29	
6 ... ♠e7 32	
2 ... e6 3 e3 b6 34	
3 ... c5 4 ♠bd2 b6 38	
2 ... d5 3 e3 g6 16	
3 ... c5 17	
3 ... ♠g4 69	
3 ... ♠f5 70	
3 ... c6 72	

London

1 d4 Δ 2 ♠f3, 3 ♠f4

1 ... d5 2 ♠f3 e6 3 ♠f4 41	
2 ... c5 3 ♠f4 42	

2 ... ♘f6 3 ♘f4 c5 43
 3 ... e6 45
 1 ... ♘f6 2 ♘f3 e6 3 ♘f4 c5 4 c3 ♙b6 49
 2 ... g6 3 ♘f4 ♘g7 4 c3 53
 4 ♘bd2 54
 4 e3 0-0 56
 4 ... d6 63
 3 ♘c3 d5 4 ♘f4 66

Miscellaneous

1 d4 d5 2 ♘f3

2 ... ♘g4 73
 2 ... ♘f5 74
 2 ... ♘c6 76
 2 ... c5 3 c4 78
 2 ... c5 3 dc 79

1 d4 ♘f6

2 ♘f3 d6 81
 2 ... c5 81
 2 e3 ♘f6 3 ♘d3 c5 4 c3 e6 5 f4 (Stonewall) 83

Blackmar-Diemer Gambit

1 d4 d5 2 e4 de 88

3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 f3 ♘f5 5 g4 90
 5 fe 91
 4 ... ef 5 ♘xf3 ♘f5 93
 5 ... g6 96
 5 ♙xf3 99